As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols  $\triangle$   $\bigcirc$  or  $\bigcirc$  on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 $\triangle$  or  $\triangle$  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

**≥ Safety Labels** P. 99

# A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety Labels on the vehicle.
- Safety Messages preceded by a safety alert symbol and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION.
  These signal words mean:

**ADANGER** 

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**AWARNING** 

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**ACAUTION** 

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- Safety Headings such as Important Safety Precautions.
- Safety Section such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

#### **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

#### **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

#### Vehicle Data Recordings\*

This vehicle records the following information as data when the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) is operated.

- Images of objects in front of the vehicle when the CMBS is activated
- Operational status of each function of the CMBS
- Accelerator / brake pedal operation
- Vehicle speed
- Information such as distance and relative speed of the target identified by the CMBS activated

Honda may obtain and use the recorded data for the purpose of technical diagnosis and research and development of Honda vehicles

The CMBS does not record images or audio inside the vehicle. Special tools are required to review or remove data (including images) recorded by CMBS.

The CMBS image recording function can be turned off so that no images are recorded when CMBS is activated.

#### Disclosure of data

Honda will not disclose or provide the acquired data to third parties with data recorded by CMBS except in the following cases:

- When the owner of the vehicle consents
- When required by law, court order, or similar legally enforceable request
- When the data has been processed to de-identify/anonymise the vehicles/users, such as when aggregate data is provided to research institutions

<sup>\*</sup> Not available on all models

#### System Updates Terms and Conditions\*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)\*, gueries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. You may elect to automatically download and install these updates in your settings, or, you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain a log of the updates or alerts that are installed on our servers

#### Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

\* Not available on all models

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other user of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

#### **≥** Safe Driving P. 37

For Safe Driving P. 38 Seat Belts P. 43

#### **▶** Instrument Panel P 101

Indicators P. 102 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 120

Airbags P. 56

#### Controls P. 149

Clock P. 150 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 153

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 189 Interior Convenience Items P. 228

#### Features P. 255

Audio System P. 256 Display Audio\* P. 258
Refuel Recommend\* P. 349

#### Driving P. 351

Before Driving P. 352 Towing a Trailer P. 356 Off-road Guidelines P. 357 Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 491 Refueling P. 493

#### ► Maintenance P. 497

Before Performing Maintenance P. 498

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 524
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 539
Cleaning P. 543

#### Handling the Unexpected P. 553

Tools P. 554 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 555 Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 578 Overheating P. 579

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 594

#### **→** Information P. 597

Specifications P. 598 Identification Numbers P. 601

			), I	
Child Safety P. 71	Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 98	Safety Labels P. 99	1	
			1), 4	
			4/1/	
Tailgate P. 171 Security Syste Mirrors P. 211 Seats P. 215 Climate Control System P. 247				
			h. "	
Audio Error Messages* P. 342	General Information on the Audio System	* P. 343		
			lh.	
When Driving P. 359 Honda Sensir Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 496	ng P. 403 Braking P. 469	Parking Your Vehicle P. 479		
			linn.	
Maintenance Schedule P. 501 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 529 Accessories and Modifications P. 550	Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 506 12-Volt Battery P. 534 Remote Trans	Replacing Light Bulbs P. 518 smitter Care P. 537	4	
				ŀ
Handling of the Jack P. 568 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 582	Power System Won't Start P. 571 Fuses P. 588	If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 575 Emergency Towing P. 593		
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 602	TCU Open Source Licence*	P. 606	,	

# Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Safe Driving P. 37

Instrument Panel P. 101

Controls P. 149

Features P. 255

Driving P. 351

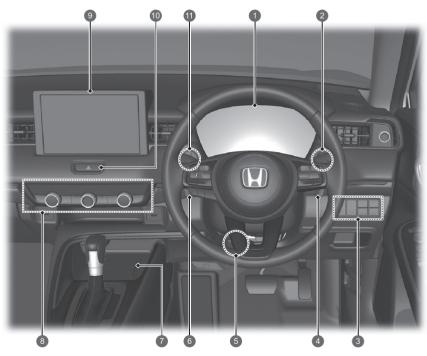
Maintenance P. 497

Handling the Unexpected P. 553

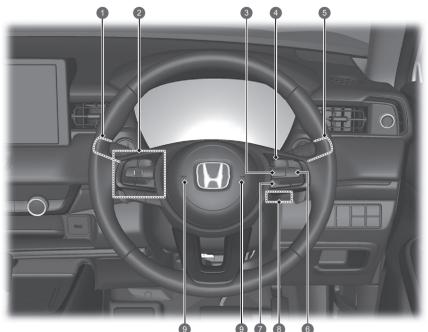
Information P. 597

Index P. 607

# **Visual Index**



- System Indicators →P.102
  Gauges →P.120
  Driver Information Interface →P.123
- 2 POWER Button P. 189
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System
  OFF) Button →R 393
  Safety Support Switch →R 400,410,451
  Parking Sensor System Button\* →R 482
  Headlight Adjuster\* →R 200
  Power Tailgate Button\* →R 177
  Heated Windscreen Button\* →R 208
- 4 Deceleration Paddle Selector (+) →P. 370
- **⑤** Steering Wheel Adjustments **○**P.210
- 6 Deceleration Paddle Selector (−) →P.370
- Wireless Charger\* → P. 240
- Seat Heater Buttons\* → P. 244 Climate Control System → P. 247 Rear Demister → P. 207 Heated Door Mirror Button\* → P. 207
- Audio System\* →P.256
   Navigation System\*
   See the Navigation System Manual
- **(1)** Hazard Warning Button
- **①** Brightness Control **→**P.209

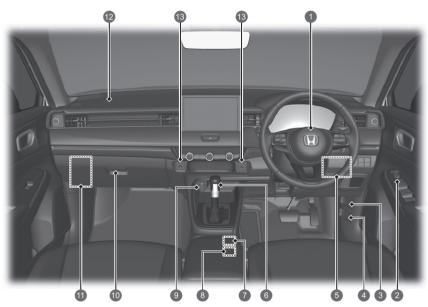


- Wipers/Washers → P. 204
- (Home) Button P.124,262
  Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons\*
  P.323
  Left Selector Wheel P.124,262
- **3 R** Button **P**. 379, 386, 419
- **4** LIM Button **→**P. 379, 386, 419
- **⑤** Headlights/Turn Signals **○**P. 192, 194 Front Fog Lights\* **○**P. 196

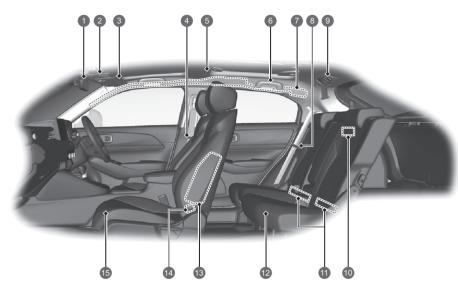
Audio Remote Controls\* P. 262

- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low**Speed Follow Buttons → ₹.418
- ② Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)
  Button → R440
  Interval Button → R431
- **8** Heated Steering Wheel Button\* → P. 243
- Horn (Press an area around .)

# **Visual Index**



- **①** Driver's Front Airbag → P.58
- 2 Door Mirror Controls → P.212 Master Door Lock Switch → P.168 Power Window Switches → P.186
- **③** Fuel Fill Door Release Handle →P. 494
- **⚠** Bonnet Release Handle **◯>**?.507
- **⑤** Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box → P.590
- 6 Shift Lever ←>P.368
- ⑦ Drive Mode Switch → P.374
  Hill Descent Control Button → P.377
- B Electric Parking Brake Switch →P. 469 Automatic Brake Hold Button →P. 473
- **(1)** Glove Box **←>**P.231
- ① Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box ►2.591
- Passenger's Front Airbag 
   →P.58
- **(B)** USB Ports\* ←>P.261



- Rearview Mirror ← P.211
- 2 Map Lights P. 228
- Sun Visors ←>P.238 Vanity Mirrors
- 4 Seat Belts P.43
- **⑤** Map Lights **◯>**P.229
- 6 Grab Handle Coat Hook ←>P.233
- **⑦** Side Curtain Airbags **◆**P.66
- ③ Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System) → P.91 Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System → P.93
- Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage\*
   →
   P.51
- **10** Luggage Area Light → P.230
- ① Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems ► P. 87
- Rear Seat ← P. 219
- **(4)** USB Ports\* **○**P. 257, 261
- **(b** Front Seat **○**P.215

# **Visual Index**



- Maintenance Under the Bonnet → P.506
- ② Windscreen Wipers →P. 204, 524
- Side Turn Signal Lights →P. 212
  P. 194, 518
- **4** Door Lock/Unlock Control **←** P.156
- **⑤** Tyres **←>**P. 529, 555
- Headlights ►>P.192,518
   Position/Daytime Running Lights
   ►>P.192,197,518
   Front Turn Signal Lights ►>P.194,518

- **1** High-Mount Brake Light **→**P.522
- 2 Rear Wiper > P. 206, 527
- 3 Opening/Closing the Tailgate →P.171
  Tailgate Outer Handle →P.172
  Rear Licence Plate Light →P.192,522
- 5 Taillights →P. 192, 521 Back-Up Lights →P. 521
- 6 Brake/Taillights →P. 192, 519
  Rear Turn Signal Lights →P. 194, 519
- How to Refuel ←>P.494

# e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

#### Energy efficiency

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

#### Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

#### e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

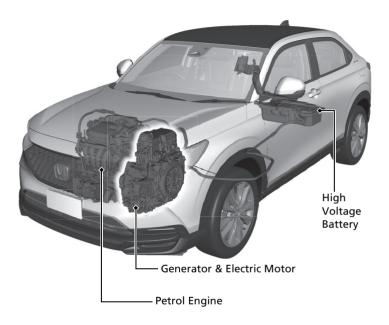
**Petrol Engine**– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

**Generator**– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

**Electric Motor**– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

**High Voltage Battery**– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.

Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle.



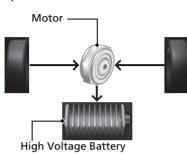


Time

Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration		
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds:  Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	<ul> <li>Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill):</li> <li>The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions:</li> <li>The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels.</li> <li>The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion.</li> <li>The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.</li> </ul>	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating.  The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.		
Power Flow Monitor		14444444444444444444444444444444444444				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating		
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output		
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output		
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging		

#### Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. This function is enhanced when the shift lever is moved to  $\boxed{\mathbb{B}}$ .

#### Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

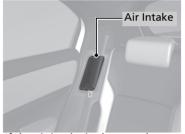
#### Sounds Unique to the e:HEV

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

# **Safety Precautions**



Do not cover the air intake



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

#### Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

#### If a crash occurs

- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
- If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
- The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
- ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.
- Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

#### **Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System**

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

#### When the vehicle is disposed

● The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

# Safe Driving

# Before Driving Checklist (\$\)

• Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

### Seat Belts CR43

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



low as possible.



### Exhaust Gas Hazard CROS

• Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

# Child Safety CRZ

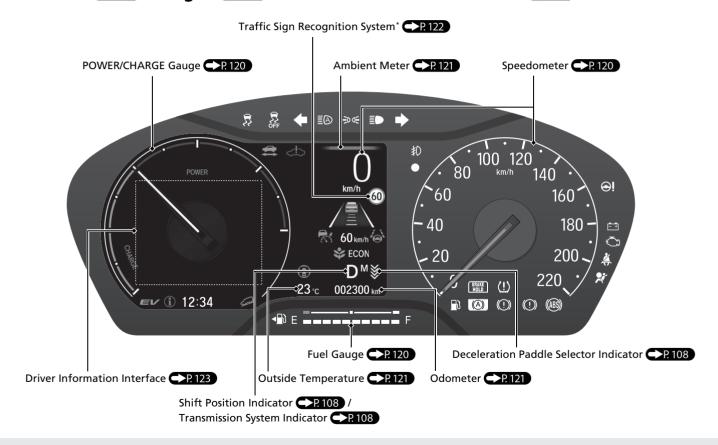
- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

# Airbags R56

• Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

# Instrument Panel Camp

# Indicators (CR102)/Gauges (CR120)/Driver Information Interface (CR123)



# Controls CRIE

# Clock CR150

#### Australian models

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

**◯** P. 272

#### Except Australian models



- 1 Press the 1 (Home) button.
- Roll the left selector wheel to select
- Roll the left selector wheel to select Clock Setup, then press the left selector wheel.
- Roll the left selector wheel to select Clock Adjustment, then press the left selector wheel.
- Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
- 6 Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

### POWER Button (>P.189)

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



# Turn Signals CR194

Turn Signal Control Lever



### Lights CP 192

**Light Control Switches** 



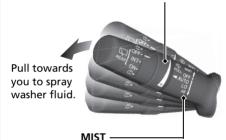
# Wipers and Washers

**○**P. 204

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring

- Lower speed, fewer sweeps $^{*1}$
- : Low sensitivity\*2
- + Higher speed, more sweeps\*1
- +: High sensitivity\*2



OFF

**INT**\*1: Low speed with intermittent

**AUTO**\*2: Wiper speed varies automatically

**LO**: Low speed wipe **HI**: High speed wipe

- \*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
- \*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

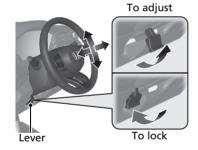
#### Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

# Steering Wheel R210

 To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



# Unlocking the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door\* from the Inside (\$\infty\$166)

 Pull the driver's door and front passenger's door\* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



# Tailgate Tailgate

 Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.

#### Models with power tailgate

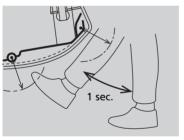
- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.



#### Models with power tailgate

With the keyless remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.



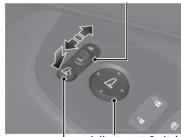


#### **Power Door Mirrors**

#### C>P.212

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Selector Switch

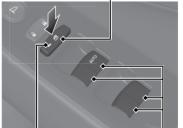


Adjustment Switch Folding Door Mirror Button

# Power Windows (>P.185)

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Power Window Lock Button



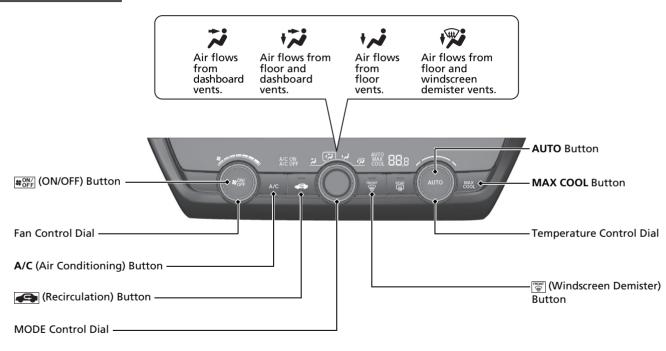
Indicator

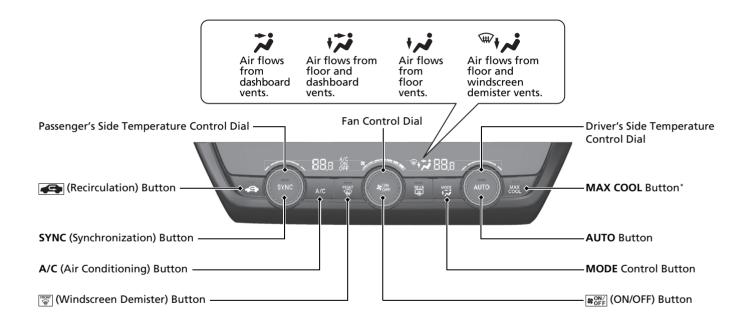
Window Switch

# Climate Control System P247

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the SON button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the button to defrost the windscreen.

#### Models without SYNC button

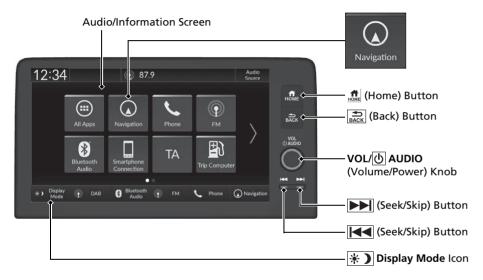




# Features CRR255

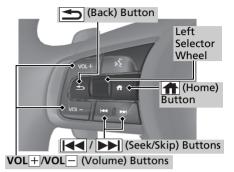
# Audio System\* →P. 256, 258

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



#### **Audio Remote Controls\***





- VOL +/VOL (Volume) Buttons Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode
  Press the (home) button, then roll up
  or down to select (audio) on the
  driver information interface, and then
  press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel: FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto/Bluetooth® Audio

Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

● ◄ / ► (Seek/Skip) Buttons

Radio:Press ◄ / ► to change the

preset radio station.

iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:

Radio:Press and hold | | to change the strong station.

USB device:

Press and hold / b to change a folder.

iPod: Press and hold ✓ / ► to change a song.

Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

# Driving CRESSID

### Transmission R 367, 368

• Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

#### Shift selection



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.



Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.



Press the shift lever release button and shift.





#### Park

Used when parking or before turning the power on or off.

Transmission is locked.



#### Reverse

Used when reversing.



#### Neutral

Transmission is not locked.



#### Drive

Used for normal driving.

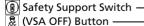
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when SPORT mode is on.



#### Drive (B)

- Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

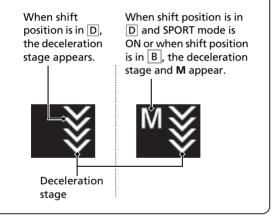




#### Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 370

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

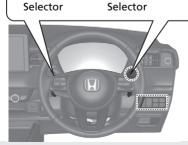
- When shift position is in D If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the instrument panel.
- When shift position is in D and SPORT mode is ON or when shift position is in B If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the instrument panel.











# CMBS On and Off (>P.410)

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

### VSA On and Off →R393

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

# 

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

# Adjustable Speed Limiter\*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the LIM button, then press the SET/– button when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h to 250 km/h.

# Refueling >P.493

Fuel recommendation: Except Thai and Malaysian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or

higher

Malaysian models

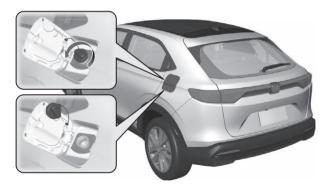
Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

1 Pull the fuel fill door release handle.

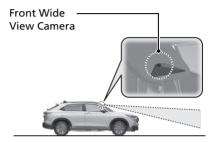
2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.

- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Honda Sensing (22)24033

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



# Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

→P. 406

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (>2.418)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

# Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) <>>? 436

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

# 

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

# 

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

# Traffic Sign Recognition System\* ← R. 461

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

# Maintenance CZE497

### Under the Bonnet €27,506

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer Wiper Blades >P.524 fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.
- Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

 Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



# Tyres P.529

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights CR518

Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected Cassa

### Flat Tyre CR555

• Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.



Indicators Come On

• Identify the indicator and consult the

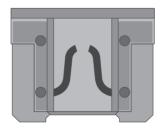
# Power System Won't Start

• If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



### Blown Fuse P.588

 Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



# Overheating P.579

 Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.



# Emergency Towing (\$\)\(\rightarrow\)?593

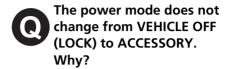
 Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# V

owner's manual.

# What to Do If





- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the POWER button.





The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Why?



The shift lever should be moved to P.



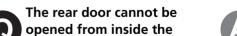
Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

vehicle. Why?



This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

**→** Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) **→** P. 476

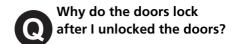




Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.

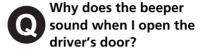
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.







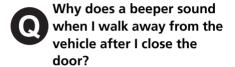
If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.





The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

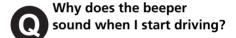




The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

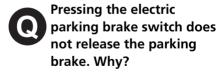
Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) ? 159







The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.





Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



Models with Deflation Warning System I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

▶ Deflation Warning System\* ▶ 159



Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.



Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.



#### Malaysian models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher is recommended. Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or lower on this vehicle?



Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving	
Important Safety Precautions	38
Important Handling Information	40
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	41
Safety Checklist	42
Seat Belts	
About Your Seat Belts	43
Fastening a Seat Belt	48
Seat Belt Inspection	54
Anchorage Points	55
Airbags	
Airbag System Components	56

	Types of Airbags	58
	Front Airbags (SRS)	58
	Side Airbags	64
	Side Curtain Airbags	66
	Airbag System Indicators	68
	Airbag Care	70
ŀ	nild Safety	
	Protecting Child Passengers	71
	Safety of Infants and Small Children	75
	Safety of Larger Children	95
Х	haust Gas Hazard	
	Carbon Monoxide Gas	98

<b>afety Labe</b> Label Loca <sup>-</sup>		 99

# For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

# **Important Safety Precautions**

#### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

#### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

#### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

#### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

#### **∑**Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

#### ■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

#### **■** Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

#### ■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

#### ■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

# **Important Handling Information**

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or rollover if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

#### 

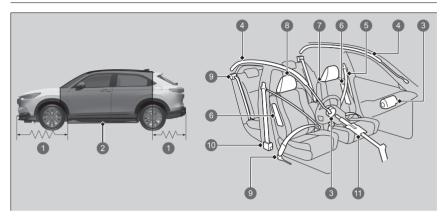
For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

- Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle
  P. 365
- Off-road Guidelines P. 357

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

# **Your Vehicle's Safety Features**



- Crush Zones
- Safety Cage
- Front Airbags
- 4 Side Curtain Airbags
- Seat Belts
- **6** Side Airbags
- Seats and Seat-Backs
- 8 Head Restraints
- Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners\*
- Matter Seat Belt Tensioners
- Collapsible Steering Column

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

#### ∑Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer\* seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

# **Safety Checklist**

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

• Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

**Seats** P. 215

• Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

**■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 224

• Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

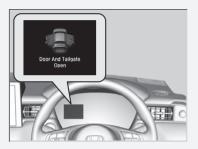
Fastening a Seat Belt P. 48

 Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.

Child Safety P. 71

#### Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.



## **About Your Seat Belts**

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ About Your Seat Belts

## **AWARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued 43

#### **■** Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four\*1 or five\*2 seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

**≧ Child Safety** P. 71

#### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

#### ■ About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Australian models

<sup>\*2:</sup> Except Australian models

#### Seat Belt Reminder



#### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink if you start driving without fastening a seat belt.

#### Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

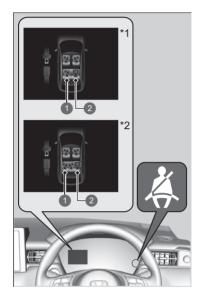
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued 45



- Fastened
- 2 Unfastened

#### ■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passengers' seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastens or unfastens their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened while driving.

- \*1: Australian models
- \*2: Except Australian models

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



Australian and Singaporean models

Driver seat

The front seats and the outer rear seats\* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts\* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

#### 

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on both sides of the vehicle also activates.

# **Fastening a Seat Belt**

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

**Seats** P. 215



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



- **2.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
  - ► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

#### ■ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

- **About Your Seat Belts** P. 43
- Seat Belt Inspection P. 54

- 1 Latch Plate
- 2 Buckle



- **3.** Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
- **4.** If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

>> Fastening a Seat Belt

# **AWARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Continued 49

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



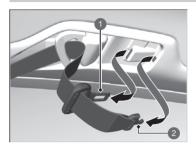
- **1.** Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
- **2.** Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

#### ∑Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

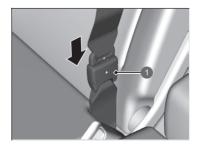
The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

## Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage\*



**1.** Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

- 1 Latch Plate
- 2 Small Latch Plate



1 Anchorage Buckle

**2.** Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

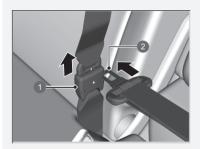
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage<sup>⋆</sup>

# **AWARNING**

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



- Anchorage Buckle
- 2 Latch Plate



**3.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

- 1 Latch Plate
- 2 Buckle

## Advice for Pregnant Women

#### Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



#### ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

# **Seat Belt Inspection**

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

# **AWARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

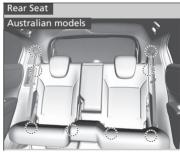
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

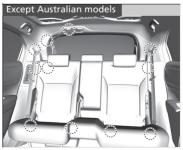
# **Anchorage Points**



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has two lap/shoulder belts.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

# Airbags

# **Airbag System Components**

The front, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked SRS AIRBAG
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked
   SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats\*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing Sensor

#### Models with passenger front airbag off system

 An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off

## Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

#### 

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

# **Types of Airbags**

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

# Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

## ■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

#### ∑Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

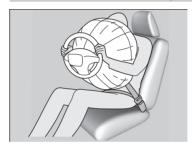
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

#### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

#### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

#### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

# Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built-in key.

#### ■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



- Passenger Front Airbag ON/
   OFF Indicator
- ON/OFF Switch
- System Warning Label

When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System \*

## **AWARNING**

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

# **AWARNING**

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

## ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



Passenger Front Airbag ON/ OFF Switch

- **1.** Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- 2. Open the front passenger's door.
- **3.** Insert the built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ➤ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
- **4.** Turn the built-in key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

**™**To deactivate the passenger front airbag system

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### **▶ Protecting Infants** P. 75

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

#### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

## ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



- 1 Infant in a rear-facing child restraint system: May ride in front if it is unavoidable
- 2 Cannot be seated in front
- 3 Passenger front airbag is: Active
- 4 Inactive

# **Side Airbags**

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

# ■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

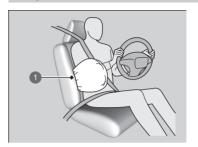
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbag Location

#### Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

## Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-tosevere side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate

Deployed Side Airbag

#### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

# ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

#### Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

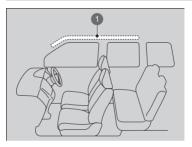
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

# **Side Curtain Airbags**

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passenger\*1 or passengers in outer seating positions\*2 during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

# ■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

#### Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

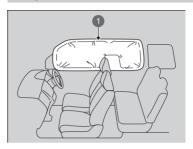
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Side Curtain Airbag Location

- \*1: Australian models
- \*2: Except Australian models

# Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

#### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

# **Airbag System Indicators**

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

## Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



- 1 Latin American models
- Except Latin American models

■ When the power mode is set to ON The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

## **AWARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Models with passenger front airbag off system

# **AWARNING**

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

# ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator\*



# ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

# **Airbag Care**

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

#### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

#### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats\*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

#### ∑Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

# **Child Safety**

# **Protecting Child Passengers**

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

#### 

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

# **AWARNING**



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

# **AWARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

Continued 71

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

#### 

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

**Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 77

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

#### 

Front Passenger's Doorjamb Malaysian models

# **AWARNING**



#### Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

Dening/Closing the Power Windows
P. 185

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

### ▶ Protecting Child Passengers

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 99

# Safety of Infants and Small Children

## ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



# ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ➤ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ■Protecting Infants

## **AWARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rearfacing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

#### Models with passenger front airbag off system

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

**▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*** P. 61

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



# ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a frontfacing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

▶ Protecting Smaller Children

# **AWARNING**

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions

## Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

#### Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

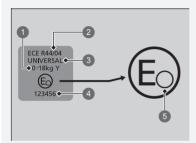
Continued 77

## **■** Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

#### Selecting a Child Restraint System

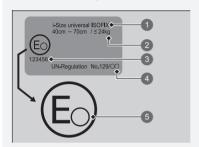
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



- 1 "Mass group"
- Regulation number
- Category
- 4 Approval number
- **6** Country code

### Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



- Category
- Size and weight indication
- Approval number
- 4 Regulation number
- 6 Country code

Continued 79

### Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

#### Australian models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

- \*1: Forward facing only.
  - Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  - If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- \*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

### Australian models

#### Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		0	2	3		
			Weight		Front	2nd row*3	
			passenger*1	Left	Right		
	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes		
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	INO	Tes			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group I	9-18kg			Yes		
amirersal before (jestino)	Group II	15-25kg	Yes*2	Yes			
	Group III	22-36kg					
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes		
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	_		No	No	No		
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)		_		No	No		
	Group 0	Up to 10kg					
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	No	R3	R3		
racing fixture (Kf/Hz/VHz/K5)	Group I	9-18kg					
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3		
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)		150cm	В3	В3	В3		

#### **≥** Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Continued 81

- \*1: Forward facing only.
  - Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  - If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- \*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

### Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

#### Latin American, Malaysian, and Thai models



- Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.

  Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.

  Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.

  Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.

  Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.

  Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.
- \*1: Forward facing only.
  - Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head
    restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head
    restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that
    it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
    Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  - If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- \*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.
- \*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.
- \*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
- \*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

# Latin American, Malaysian, and Thai models

## **Detail information for CRS installation**

	Size groups Weight Stature		0	2	3	4
			Fuent messen men*1	2nd row*3		
			Front passenger*1	Left*5	Centre*4	Right*6
	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	INO			162
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group I	9-18kg			Yes	
	Group II	15-25kg	Yes*2	Yes		Yes
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*7	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)		_	No	No	No	No
	Group 0	Up to 10kg			No	R3
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0+	Up to 13kg	No	R3		
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I 9-18kg		No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)		≤150cm	В3	В3	В3	В3

- \*1: Forward facing only.
  - Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
  - If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  - If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- \*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- \*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.
- \*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.
- \*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
- \*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
- \*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

## Latin American models

## ■ Latin Genuine CRS List

#### **INMETRO466**

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category	
Group 0 up to 10kg	_	_	
Group 0+ up to 13kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)	
Group I 9 to 18kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX	
Group II, III 15 to 36kg	_	_	

## Malaysian and Thai models

# ■ Malaysian, Thailand Genuine CRS List

### **UN R129**

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	I Handa Daby 9. Kide i Siza	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

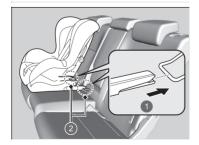
# Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



**1.** Locate the lower anchorages under the marks

Marks



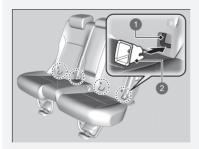
- Rigid Type
- 2 Lower Anchorages

- 2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
  - ➤ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

# **AWARNING**

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



- 1 Lower Anchorage
- 2 Guide-cup



- Flexible Type
- 2 Lower Anchorages



1 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

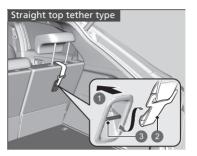
#### ≥ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

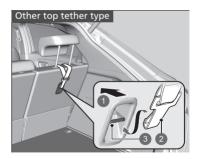
For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

#### Child restraint system with tether strap

- **3.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
  - ► Remove the luggage area cover\*.
    - **Luggage Area Cover\*** P. 236
- **4.** Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
- **5.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **6.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **8.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



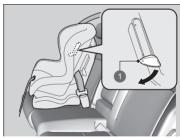
Support Leg

#### Child restraint system with support leg

- **3.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ➤ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- ► Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

# Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





1 Tab

- **1.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- **2.** Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
- **3.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- **4.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- **5.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - ► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

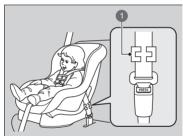
≥ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Continued 91



- 6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



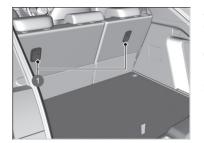
1 Locking Clip

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

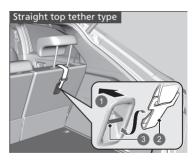
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- **3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- **4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- **5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

## Adding Security with a Tether



Tether Anchorage Points



- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

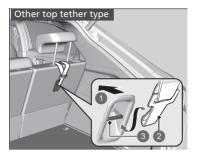
- **1.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
  - ► Remove the luggage area cover\*.

    ► Luggage Area Cover\* P. 236
- **2.** Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
- **3.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **4.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **6.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

#### 

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



- Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage

# **Safety of Larger Children**

## ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front

## Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

## **AWARNING**

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed

Continued 95

#### Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



1 Guide

A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

#### **≫** Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

#### ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

# **Exhaust Gas Hazard**

## **Carbon Monoxide Gas**

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

#### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

- 1. Select the fresh air mode.
- 2. Select the mode.
- 3. Set the fan speed to high.
- **4.** Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

○ Carbon Monoxide Gas

# **AWARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

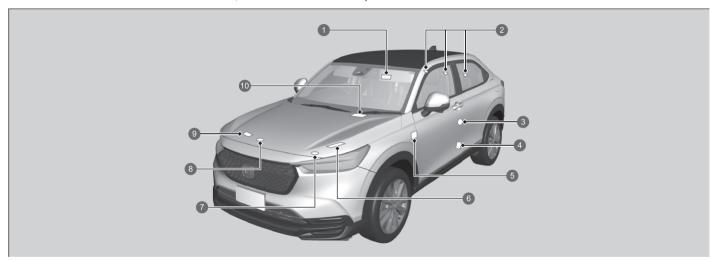
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

# Safety Labels

# **Label Locations**

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



- Protecting Child Passenger 
  P. 71
- 2 Rear Head Restraints\* → P. 225
- 3 Protecting Child Passenger\* → P. 73
- **4** Information for Painting **≥** P. 549
- 5 Passenger Front Airbag Off System\* ▶ P. 63

- **6** 12-volt battery
- Inverter Coolant Reserve Tank Cap
- 8 Radiator Cap
- Air Conditioner<sup>\*</sup> 
   P. 539
- Wireless Charger\* 

  P. 242

\* Not available on all models

# **Instrument Panel**

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

ndicators	102
Gauges and Driver Information Inte	rfac
Gauges	120
Driver Information Interface	123

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

(1) *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<b>→</b> P. 104
( <u>)</u> ) *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<b>→</b> P. 106
BRAKE *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 106
(A) *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 106
<b>( (</b> □) *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<b>→P</b> . 107

<del>- +</del> *1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 107
D	Shift Position Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 108
М 😻	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 108
	Transmission System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 108
*1, *2	Power System Indicator*2	<b>→</b> P. 107
POWER * 1, *3 SYSTEM	POWER SYSTEM Indicator*	3 F. 107

READY	READY Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 107
EV*1	EV Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 107
*	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 109
[]	Low Fuel Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 109
<b>(</b> BS) *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 109

<sup>\*1:</sup> When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

<sup>\*2:</sup> Except Latin American models

<sup>\*3:</sup> Latin American models

*	*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 109
ON OFF №2	*1	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators*	<b>→</b> P. 110
<del>,</del>	*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 110
ÖFF	*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 110
⊕!	*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 111
(!)	*1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<b>→</b> P. 112
<b>++</b>		Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<b>→</b> P. 111
■		High Beam Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 111
=00€		Lights On Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 111

<b>≱</b> 0	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<b>→</b> P. 111
<b>■ (A)</b> *1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 113
<b>ॐ</b> ECON	ECON Mode Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 114
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 114
NORMAL	NORMAL Mode Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 114
	System Message Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 114
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	<b>→</b> P. 115
PLIM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	<b>→</b> P. 115
<b>→</b> *1	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	<b>→</b> P. 115

0	Security System Alarm Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 113
0	Immobilizer System Indicator	<b>→</b> P. 113
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	<b>→</b> P. 116
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)	<b>→</b> P. 116
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	<b>→</b> P. 116
<b>*</b>	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	<b>→</b> P. 117
(a) *1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<b>→</b> P. 117
1	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	<b>→</b> P. 119

<sup>\*1:</sup> When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

\* Not available on all models

103

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	<ul> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied.</li> <li>Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off.</li> <li>Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.</li> </ul>
		Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	<ul> <li>Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released.</li> <li>Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level.</li> <li>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 584</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	<ul> <li>Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 584</li> <li>Comes on along with the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.</li> <li>☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 586</li> <li>Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set.</li> <li>Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li>☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 586</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	<b>▶ Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 473
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	<b>▶ Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 473
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• Comes on while driving - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• Stays on constantly - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
H	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<b>☑</b> If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 583
POWER *2 SYSTEM	Power System Indicator*1 POWER SYSTEM Indicator*2	Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.	<ul> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Stop Driving When Safe*1/Do Not Drive*2     displays on the driver information interface -     Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a     dealer.</li> </ul>
READY	<b>READY</b> Indicator	Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	<b>▶ Turning on the Power</b> P. 359
EV	<b>EV</b> Indicator	Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.	_
= +	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately.</li> <li>☑ Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 534</li> <li>☑ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 582</li> </ul>

<sup>\*1:</sup>Except Latin American models
\*2:Latin American models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Transmission System Indicator	Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	<ul> <li>Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li>Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> </ul>
D	Shift Position Indicator	Indicates the current shift position.	Shifting P. 368
М 💸	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled.</li> <li>Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector.</li> <li>Comes on with M when SPORT mode is selected or the shift position is in B, and the paddle selector is pulled.</li> </ul>	Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 370

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON.</li> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts.</li> <li>Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Seat Belt Reminder P. 45</li> </ul>
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).	• <b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• <b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
(ABS)	Anti-lock Brake System ( <b>ABS</b> ) Indicator	Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  ■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 476
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:</li> <li>Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>Side airbag system</li> <li>Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul>	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
ON <b>⊗</b> OFF <b>X</b> 2	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators*	<ul> <li>When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</li> <li>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<b>₽ Passenger Front Airbag Off System*</b> P. 61
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	_
		<ul> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, agile handling assist or hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  ▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 392  ▶ Hill start assist system P. 364
		<ul> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	<b>≥ VSA On and Off</b> P. 393
ÖFF		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<b>⊕!</b>	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.	<ul> <li>Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.</li> <li>☑ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 585</li> </ul>
	Turn Signal and Hazard	<ul> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul>	• Does not blink or blinks rapidly  ▶ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 518, 519
77	Warning Indicators	<ul> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<b>■ Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 478
	High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	_
≥0 0∈	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	<b>➡ Lights</b> P. 192
10	Front Fog Light Indicator*	Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	<b>₽ Fog Lights*</b> P. 196

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(!)	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul> <li>May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when: <ul> <li>One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>The system has not been initialised.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised.</li> <li>Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 395</li> </ul>
\ <i>\</i>		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.     The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<b>≣</b> (A)	Auto High- Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	<b>▶ Auto High-Beam</b> P. 201
Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	<ul> <li>Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.</li> <li>Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>
Indicator  80 80	Security System Alarm Indicator	Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	Security System Alarm P. 183

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<b>⇔</b> ECON	<b>ECON</b> Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to <b>ECON</b> .	ECON Mode P. 376
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on when you set the drive mode to SPORT.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as SPORT mode is selected.</li> <li>▶ Drive Mode Switch P. 374</li> </ul>
NORMAL	NORMAL Mode Indicator	<ul> <li>Comes on when you set the drive mode to NORMAL.</li> </ul>	Drive Mode Switch P. 374
$(\mathbf{i})$	System Message Indicator	Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	<ul> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button, and select Information*/Warnings* to see the message again.</li> <li>■ Switching the Display P. 123</li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly.</li> <li>The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  (home) button is pressed.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	<ul> <li>Lights up in white when you press the button.</li> <li>If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button.</li> <li>Lights up in green when the adjustable speed limiter is set.</li> </ul>	<b>▶ Adjustable Speed Limiter*</b> P. 379
<b>PI</b> M	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	<ul> <li>Lights up in white when you press the button.         If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button.         </li> <li>Lights up in green when you press the RES/+ button or SET/- button.</li> </ul>	<b>▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter*</b> P. 385
	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	<ul> <li>Lights up in white when the hill descent control system is on and ready to use.</li> <li>Lights up in green when the hill descent control system is in operation.</li> </ul>	<b>▶ Hill Descent Control System</b> P. 377

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	<ul> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.</li> <li>The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
£ \ 3		<ul> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.</li> <li>ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.</li> <li>Load Limit P. 355</li> <li>Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
75	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	<ul> <li>Lights up in white when you press the button.</li> <li>Australian models</li> <li>If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button.</li> <li>Lights up in green when you press the RES/+ button or SET/- button.</li> </ul>	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 418
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
<b>₩</b>		Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	<ul> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.</li> <li>Load Limit P. 355</li> <li>Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<b>6</b>	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	<ul> <li>Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button.</li> <li>Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.</li> </ul>	■ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 436
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, or blind spot information system*.</li> </ul>	Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
8		Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	<ul> <li>Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.</li> <li>Load Limit P. 355</li> <li>Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.	Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.     The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
		Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  ▶ Front Wide View Camera P. 467
8	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)		<ul> <li>Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera.</li> <li>Front Wide View Camera P. 467</li> <li>It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(8)	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	<ul> <li>Models with blind spot information system</li> <li>Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor.</li> <li>Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Comes on while driving - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles.</li> <li>The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down.</li> <li>Blind spot information System* P. 397</li> </ul>
(8)	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	<ul> <li>Lights up in green when Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system* are on.</li> <li>Lights up in green and grey when Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, or blind spot information system*, or any two of these systems are off.</li> <li>Lights up in grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system* are off.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Noad Departure Mitigation system On and Off P. 451</li> <li>CMBS On and Off P. 410</li> <li>Blind spot information System On and Off P. 400</li> </ul>

# Gauges and Driver Information Interface

# Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

# Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

# ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

# ■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

### **■** Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

# ■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

### ∑Fuel Gauge

#### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

### ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

### Ambient Meter

#### Models without G-Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner with the **SPORT** mode off.

#### All models

Changes to red to indicate that **SPORT** mode is selected.

# Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}$ C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

### ■Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Settings\* P. 136

**≧** Customized Features P. 309

### **■** Clock

Shows the clock.

You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

**≥ Clock Setup** P. 272

# Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

**■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 418

**≥ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 436

# ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System\*

Shows traffic signs while driving.

The indicator blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition System is exceeded.

**▶** Traffic Sign Recognition System\* P. 461

# **Driver Information Interface**

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer and have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low, Engine Temperature Too Hot** or **Limited Stopping Power**\*1/**Reduced Stopping Power**\*2 message is displayed.

- **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 582
- Overheating P. 579
- ▶ If the Limited Stopping Power\*¹/Reduced Stopping Power\*² Warning Appears P. 583

# Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

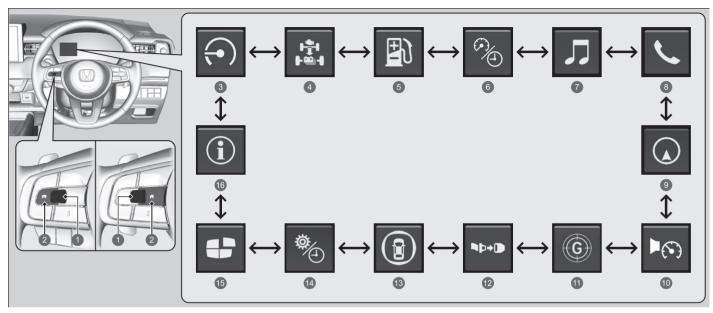
#### Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.



**≧** Customize Display P. 135

- \*1: Latin American models
- \*2: Except Latin American models



- 1 Left Selector Wheel
- (Home) Button
- **3 Power /Charge ≥** P. 125
- **4 Power Flow** ▶ P. 126
- **⑤ Range & Fuel №** P. 127

- **6** Speed & Time **≥** P. 129
- **7** Audio\* ▶ P. 131
- **8 Phone**\* **▶** P. 131
- **9 Navigation**\* **₽** P. 131
- **(1)** Speed Alarm\* ▶ P. 132
- **① G-Meter**\* **№** P. 133

- **1** Seat Belts P. 134
- **B** Safety Support **≥** P. 134
- **136 (4) (4) (4) (5) (4) (6) (4) (6) (6) (6) (6) (7)**
- **⑤** Customize Display **№** P. 135
- **⑥** Information/Warnings **№** P. 135

# ■ Power/Charge

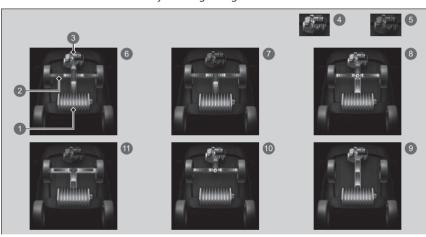
Shows the degree to which the electric motor is being powered and the High Voltage battery is being charged. Other contents will be hidden.

POWER/CHARGE Gauge P. 120

Continued 125

# Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



- 1 High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
- 2 Power Flow
- B Engine
- 4 Engine ON
- **5** Engine OFF
- **6 Hybrid (HV)**: Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
- **7** Electric Vehicle (EV): Power is supplied by the motor.
- **8 Engine (Direct Drive)**: The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- **9** The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
- **10** Power is being supplied by the engine only.
- **11 Regeneration**: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

▶ Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

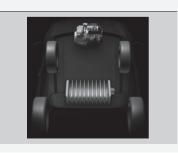
The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

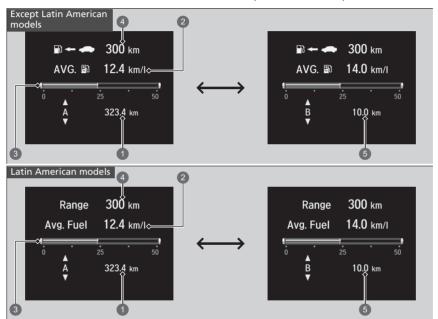
Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If the temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



# ■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- 1 Trip Meter A
- 2 Average Fuel Economy
- Instant Fuel Economy
- 4 Range
- **5** Trip Meter B

### **■** Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

### ■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l\* or l/100km\*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l\* or l/100 km\*.

# **■** Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

#### ■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

#### Singaporean, Thai, and Malaysian models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Settings\* P. 136

#### ■ Average fuel economy

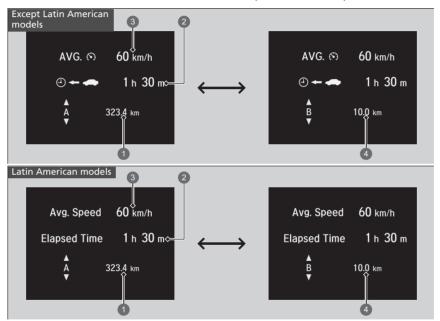
You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Settings\* P. 136

Customized Features P. 309

# ■ Speed & Time

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



- 1 Trip meter A
- 2 Elapsed Time
- 3 Average Speed
- 4 Trip meter B

- **■** Trip meter
  - **₹** Trip meter P. 128

### **■** Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

# **■** Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### **≥**Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

- Settings\* P. 136
- Customized Features P. 309

### 

You can change when to reset the average speed.

- Settings\* P. 136
- Customized Features P. 309

### Audio\*

Shows the current audio information.

**Basic Operation** P. 259

### ■ Phone \*

Shows the current phone information.

**▶ Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 323

# Navigation\*

### **■** Compass

Shows the compass screen.

### **■** Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

**▶ Apple CarPlay** P. 301

Android Auto P. 305

### Navigation \*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Customized Features P. 309

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

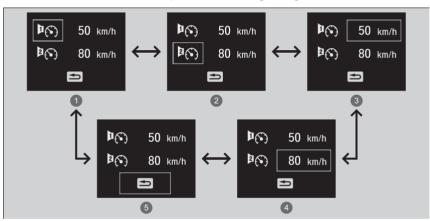
Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

# ■ Speed Alarm\*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

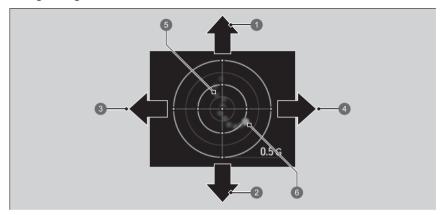
Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



- Speed Alarm 1 On/Off\*1
- 2 Speed Alarm 2 On/Off\*1
- 3 Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h\*1]
- 4 Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h\*1]
- Back
- \*1:Default Setting

### ■ G-meter\*

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



- When decelerated while moving forward
   When accelerated while reversing
- 2 When accelerated while moving forward When decelerated while reversing
- 3 When steering to the right
- 4 When steering to the left
- **5** Lateral forces of the past three seconds (white)
- **6** Real-time lateral force (red)

#### ≫G-meter\*

The meter does not display a lateral force larger than 0.5 G.

### Seat Belts

Appears when any of the seat belts are latched or unlatched.

# Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system\*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



- 1 Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
- 2 Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
- 3 Area Info for Blind Spot Information System\*
- 4 Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info\*
- Area Info for CMBS
- 6 CMBS Icon and Status Info

#### **Safety Support**

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

- Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off P. 451
- **Blind spot information System\*** P. 397
- CMBS On and Off P. 410

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.

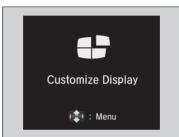
- Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P. 117
- Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)
  P. 119

# Customize Display

Change the settings to your liking.

### **■** Arrange content

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



- Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select Customize Display, then press the left selector wheel.
- **2.** Roll the left selector wheel



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them

# ■ Information\*¹/Warnings\*²

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

- \*1: Except Latin American models
- \*2: Latin American models

#### ○ Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

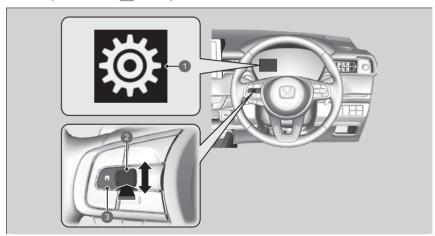
#### ∑Information \*¹/Warnings \*²

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

# Settings\*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

#### ■ How to customize



- Driver Information Interface
- 2 Left Selector Wheel
- (Home) Button

### Settings \*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

- **List of customizable options** P. 137
- **Example of customization settings** P. 145

When you customize settings, shift to P.

# **■** List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	Clock Adjustment	Adjust the time.  Adjusting the Clock P. 150	_
	Except Latin American models  Clock Display  Latin American models  Clock Format	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	24h/12h*1/OFF
Driver Assist System Setup	Except Latin American models  Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance  Latin American models Forward Collision Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Except Latin American models  Far/Normal*1/Near  Latin American models  Long/Normal*1/Short
	Except Latin American models  ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep Latin American models ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	ON/OFF*1

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Assist System Setup	Lead Car Departure Notification System*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	Normal*1/Early/OFF
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Except Latin American models  Early/Normal*1/Delayed/ Warning Only  Latin American models  Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning Only
	Except Latin American models  Lane Keep Assist Beep  Latin American models  Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	ON/OFF*1

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Language Selection*	Changes the displayed language.	ENGLISH/FRANÇAIS/ ESPAÑOL*1
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
Meter Setup	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	Except Latin American models  When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*1  Latin American models  When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset*1

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	Except Latin American models  When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*1  Latin American models  When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset*1
	Except Latin American models  Alarm Volume Control Latin American models  Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Except Latin American models  Max/Mid*1/Min  Latin American models  High/Mid*1/Low
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight*	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Fuel Economy Unit*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	km/l* <sup>1</sup> /l/100km

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	High*¹/Low
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF
	Keyless Access Beep	Sets the beeper sound or not when you grab either front door handle.	ON*1/OFF
	Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Auto High-Beam	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	ON*1/OFF
Lighting Setup	Except Latin American models Interior Light Dimmer Duration Latin American models Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec* <sup>1</sup> /15sec

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec
Lighting Setup	Except Latin American models  Headlight Integration With Wipers  Latin American models  Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	ON* <sup>1</sup> /OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Auto Door Lock*	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	With Vehicle Speed*1/ Shift From P/OFF
	Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	Shift To P*1/IGN OFF/OFF
	Except Latin American models  Walk Away Lock  Latin American models  Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF*1
Door Setup	Except Latin American models  Keyless Lock Notification  Latin American models  Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	ON*1/OFF
	Keyless Remote Power Window Control*	Turns remote window control using the keyless remote on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Auto Folding Door Mirror*	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	Auto Fold With Keyless*1/ Manual Only

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Power Tailgate Setup	Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	Anytime*1/When Unlocked
	Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	ON (Power/Manual)*1/ OFF (Manual Only)
	Except Latin American models  Hands Free Access  Latin American models  Hands Free Access  Function	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	ON* <sup>1</sup> /OFF
Default All	_	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Except Latin American models  Cancel/OK  Latin American models  Cancel/Set

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

# **■** Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually** 

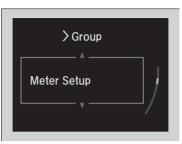
### Reset/Manual Reset



1. Press the fibutton, to select (Settings), then press the left selector wheel.



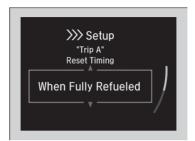
Continued 145

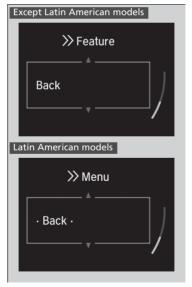


- **2.** Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
- 3. Press the left selector wheel.



- **4.** Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
  - ➤ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select When Fully Refueled, IGN OFF/When Ignition Is Turned OFF, Manually Reset/Manual Reset, or Back.





- **5.** Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
  - ➤ The When Fully Refueled screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- **6.** Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
- **7.** Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> 150	J
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key 153	3
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 15!	5
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Outside 156	б
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Inside 166	б
Childproof Door Locks 169	9
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* 170	O
Tailgate17	1

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button. Heated Windscreen Button* Brightness Control	20
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	21
Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	21
Power Door Mirrors	21
eats	21
nterior Convenience Items	22
Climate Control System	24

# **Adjusting the Clock**

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

# Australian models

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Clock Setup P. 272

## ■ Adjusting the Clock

### Australian models

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.



### Except Australian models

- Using the settings menu on the driver information interface
- **1.** Press the (Home) button.

(Home) ButtonLeft Selector Wheel

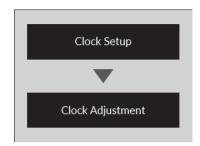


**2.** Roll the left selector wheel to select then press the left selector wheel.

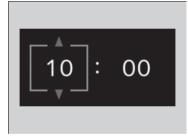
**≥** Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

You can change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

Settings\* P. 136



- **3.** Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then press the left selector wheel.
- **4.** Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Adjustment**, then press the left selector wheel.



- **5.** Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
- **6.** Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

# Locking and Unlocking the Doors

# Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



- 1 Keyless Remote
- 2 Keyless Remote with power tailgate button
- 3 Keyless Remote with button and power tailgate button

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

#### 

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 182

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

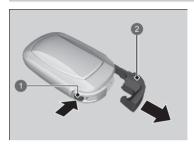
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

### Models with ( ) button

You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start\* P. 361

# ■ Built-in Key

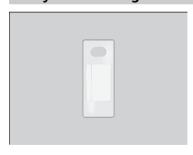


The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull out the key while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

- Release Button
- 2 Built-in Key

# ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

# 

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

# **Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength**

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

In the following cases, activating the power system or locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

### ∑Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

# **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside**

# Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate.

You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

## **≥** Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

Interior Lights P. 228

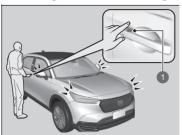
### **∑**Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

## ■ Locking the doors and tailgate



1 Door Lock Sensor



1 Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

➤ Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate, lock; and the security system sets.

### 

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass and tailgate.

Continued 157

# ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



Grab the front door handle:

- ► All doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Outer Handle

Press the outer handle:

- ► All doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.
  - **Dopening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 172

### ∑Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash and beep settings can be customized using the driver information interface or audio/information screen\*.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

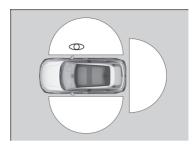
#### Australian models

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 316

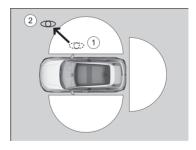
#### Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*
P. 173



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m



# ■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed or all doors are closed and tailgate begins power close operation\*, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s) and tailgate.

- 1) While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle
  - ➤ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
- ② Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
  - Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

### ■Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen\*.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen\*, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

# Now to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 316

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

- 1. Set the power mode to OFF.
- 2. Open the driver's door.
- **3.** Using the master door lock switch or lock tab on the driver's door, operate the lock as follows:

Lock  $\rightarrow$  Unlock  $\rightarrow$  Lock  $\rightarrow$  Unlock.

► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
   The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
   The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

∑Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

## Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate. If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

#### Models with power tailgate

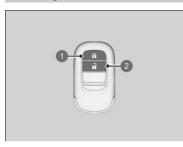
If equipped, the user must wait until the power tailgate fully closes before the auto lock function will be activated.

If you use the power tailgate walk away close function when all the doors are closed, the auto lock function will also be activated.

- ►When you walk away from the vehicle while the power tailgate is automatically closing, it will continue to lock automatically.
  - Power Tailgate Walk Away Close P. 175

Continued 161

# ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



- 1 Lock Button
- Unlock Button



# ■ Locking the doors and tailgate Press the lock button.

#### Once:

Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

# Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

➤ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

# **∑**Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

# ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

► Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

### Substitution States S

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Remote Battery P. 537

Continued 163

# ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

- 1 Lock
- Unlock

## ∑Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

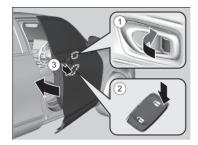
When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

### Singaporean, Australian, Thai, and Malaysian models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

# ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



# ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

# ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

## ■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

### ■Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

# **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside**

# ■ Using the Lock Tab



- Locking a door
  Push the lock tab forward.
- Unlocking a door Pull the lock tab rearward.

- 1 To lock
- 2 To unlock

## **≥** Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock/ unlock at the same time.

# Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door\* Inner Handle



1 Inner Handle

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

► The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except Singaporean, Australian, Thai, and Malaysian models

The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door\*
Inner Handle

The driver's door and front passenger's\* door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

**► Childproof Door Locks** P. 169

# ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and tailgate.

# **>>** Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

2 To unlock

# **Childproof Door Locks**

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

# ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

# ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ○ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Unlock

2 Lock

# Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

# Auto Door Locking

### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

# ■ Auto Door Unlocking

### ■ Park unlock mode

All doors and tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

### 

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Settings\* P. 136

# **Tailgate**

# **Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate**

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

#### Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

#### All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98

# **AWARNING**

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access\*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

\* Not available on all models 171

# **Opening/Closing the Tailgate**



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

Outer Handle



1 Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

### ∑Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

# Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle or button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in **P**.

∑Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

# **AWARNING**

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

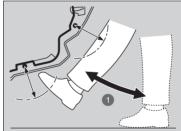
#### NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

# Using the Hands Free Access





About 1 second

Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

### Substitution Streem S

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the driver information interface or audio/information screen\* and then select OFF for the feature.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 316

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

# ■ Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the power tailgate will automatically close.



- **1.** Carry the keyless remote and press the walk away close button.
  - ➤ The indicator on the walk away close button will turn green when the walk away close is activated.

Walk Away Close Button



Walk at least 1.0 m away

- **2.** Walk at least 1.0 m away from the vehicle within 30 seconds of pressing the walk away close button.
  - ➤ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds, then the power tailgate begins to close.

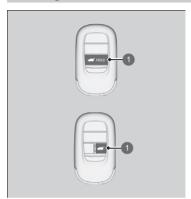
#### ▶ Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When auto lock function is set to ON, the vehicle will automatically lock when all doors and the tailgate have closed.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 159

Continued 175

# Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Power Tailgate Button

# ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked\*1/When unlocked\*2: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

### Australian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 316

- \*1: Except Australian models
- \*2: Australian models
- \* Not available on all models

### ∑Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

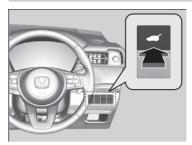
If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

# Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

### ■Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

# Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- ► The beeper sounds.
- ► If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.
- **Dening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 172

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

### **>>** Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 316

# ■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



1 Tailgate Inner Button

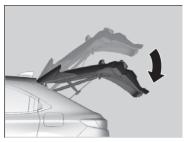
Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

► The beeper sounds.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Continued 179

# ■ Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

**1.** Open the tailgate to the desired position.



1 Tailgate Inner Button

**2.** Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

### ▶ Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the directions step 2.

### Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

# Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

### 

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

#### NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

#### ▶ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

# Security System

# **Immobilizer System**

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the POWER button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

### 

### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

# **Security System Alarm**

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key\*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key\*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

### Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and the security system alarm indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

#### Models with power tailgate

 Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button on the dashboard.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Except Singaporean, Australian, Thai, and Malaysian models

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key\*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

#### Security System Alarm

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key\*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### Singaporean, Australian, Thai, and Malaysian models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Except Singaporean, Australian, Thai, and Malaysian models

# Windows

# **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle

■Opening/Closing the Power Windows

# **AWARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### Australian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Singaporean models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

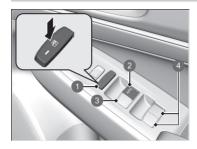
### Auto-open/close function on front windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Continued 185

# Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



- Power Window Lock Button
- 2 Driver's Window Switch
- 3 Front Passenger's Window Switch\*
- 4 Rear Passenger's Window Switch\*

## ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### **■** Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly. **To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

### ∑Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **Auto Reverse**

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

# Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function\*



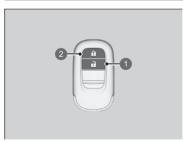
**To open:** Push the switch down. **To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Close

Open

# **■** Opening/Closing\* the Windows with the Remote\*



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close\*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

1 Unlock Button

Lock Button

#### ■Opening/Closing\* the Windows with the Remote\*

You can turn the remote window control function on and off.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136 Australian models

### How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P 316

# ■ Closing the Windows with the Key\*



**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Close

# Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

### **POWER Button**

# ■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→VEHICLE OFF.

#### **VEHICLE OFF:**

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

### ACCESSORY:

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

#### ON:

All accessories can be used.

#### **≫POWER Button**

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than  $\boxed{P}$ .

Continued 189

### Automatic Power Off

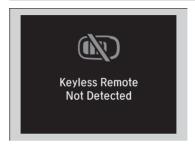
If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in  $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$  and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sound.

# Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

# ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

### X Keyless Remote Reminder X Seyless Remote Remote Reminder X Seyless Remote Remote Remote Remote Reminder X Seyless Remote Remote

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and all the doors are closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the keyless remote is within the system's operational range.

# Lights

# Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

# ■ Manual operation Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to **■**□.

### **Position lights:**

Turn the light switch to 3005.

### Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in **P** or the parking brake is applied.

- ▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:
- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of **P** or the parking brake is released.

#### ≥Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Lights On Indicator P. 111

#### 

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

When the light switch is turned to DOS or DO and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

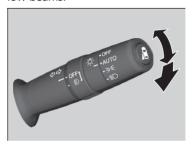
When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

#### Models without headlight adjust function

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

# ■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



### **■** Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

► Release the lever to return to low beams.

### 

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

### Models without automatic intermittent wiper

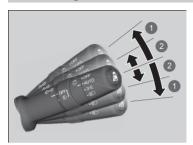


#### Models with automatic intermittent wiper



Continued 193

# ■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

# ■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

# ■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

► If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

### ∑Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Indicators P. 102

# Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

# Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

#### 

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

Now to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 316

### ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting. Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

### Australian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 316

# Fog Lights\*



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

# **■ Daytime Running Lights**

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

### ■ Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

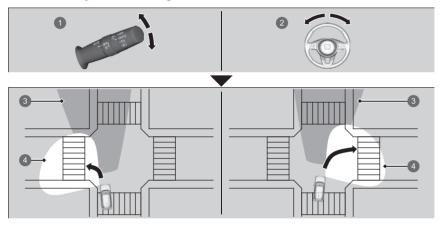
Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

# **Active Cornering Lights\***

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ .

■ The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:



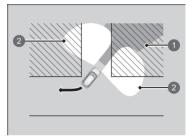
- 1 You operate the turn signal lever.
- 2 You turn the steering wheel around 70 degrees or more.
- 3 Headlight beam coverage
- 4 Cornering light beam coverage

### ■ Active Cornering Lights\*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in  $\boxed{\mathbb{R}}$ , move it to another position momentarily.



Active Cornering Lights

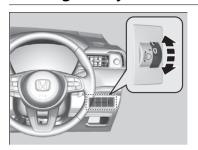


Headlight beam coverage
 Cornering light beam coverage

# ■ Both front corners are illuminated when:

You put the transmission into  $\mathbb{R}$ .

# **Headlight Adjuster\***



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the power mode is in ON.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

### ■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	U
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

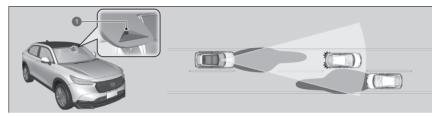
### 

#### Australian models

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# **Auto High-Beam**

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



Front Wide View Camera

### How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- Auto High-Beam Indicator
- 2 Light Switch

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

### 

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera P 467

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer. If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to Turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

### ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

### Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

### Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.



- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Matter Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

### ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

### Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

- ➤ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to To and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

### Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to **EO**.

► To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

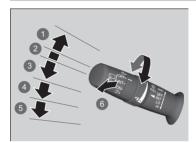
Australian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

\* Not available on all models

# **Wipers and Washers**

# Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- MIST
- OFF
- 3 INT\*1/AUTO\*2
- 4 LO: Low speed wipe
- **6 HI**: High speed wipe
- 6 Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT\*1, AUTO\*2, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

## ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

- \*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
- \*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation
- \* Not available on all models

#### 

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister or heated windscreen\* to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

#### Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the LO setting become the same.

# Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*



Adjustment Ring

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

### **Sensor sensitivity**



Low sensitivity

High sensitivity

#### Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

#### 

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



#### NOTICE

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

# ■ Rear Wiper/Washer



**1NT**: Intermittent

**2 ON**: Continuous wipe

OFF

Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

# ■ Washer (🛱)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

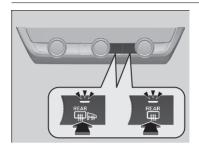
# **■** Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into  ${\Bbb R}$  with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT*1 (Intermittent) AUTO*2 (Intermittent)	Intermittent
<b>LO</b> (Low speed wipe) <b>HI</b> (High speed wipe)	Continuous

- \*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
- \*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror\* button to demist the rear window and mirrors\* when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister and heated door mirror\* automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

#### Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror<sup>∗</sup> Button

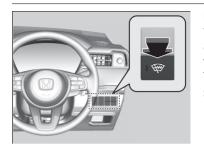
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

#### Models with heated door mirror button

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

\* Not available on all models

# **Heated Windscreen Button\***

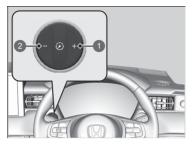


Press the heated windscreen button to deice the windscreen at the wiper park area and along the driver's side edge of the windscreen when the power mode is in ON. The heated windscreen will automatically switches off after 15 minutes.

### 

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

# **Brightness Control**



1 H Button

2 ─ Button



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the + or - button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten**: Press the + button.

**Dim**: Press the \_ button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum.

Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

### **■** Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

### **≥** Brightness Control

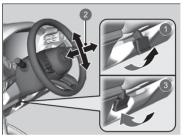
The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on.
- The ambient lighting is low.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

# **Adjusting the Steering Wheel**

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- Release
- 2 Adjust
- 3 Lock

- **1.** While the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ► The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
- **2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ► Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- **3.** Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ➤ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

∑Adjusting the Steering Wheel

# **AWARNING**

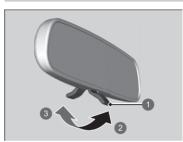
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

# **Interior Rearview Mirror**

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

# ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position.

The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

#### >> Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Front Seats P. 215

### 1 Tab

- 2 Night Position
- 3 Daytime Position

# Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### 

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ .

\* Not available on all models

# **Power Door Mirrors**



- Selector Switch
- 2 Adjustment Switch
- **3** Folding Door Mirror Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

# **■** Folding door mirrors

Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

### Reverse Tilt Door Mirror\*



Selector Switch

If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into [R]; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of [R].

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

# Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

### **■** Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, touch the door lock sensor on either front door, or press the door lock button on tailgate.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

### **■** Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the keyless remote or keyless access system. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

### ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 316

### **Front Seats**



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

#### Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

#### ≫Front Seats

# **AWARNING**

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

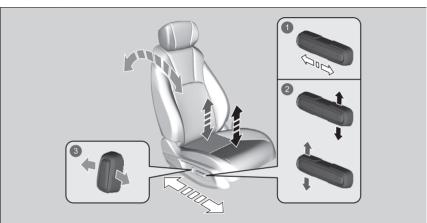
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Continued 215

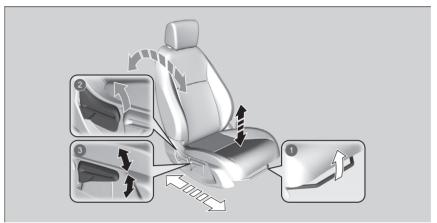
## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the driver's power seat\*



- **1** Horizontal Position Adjustment Slide the switch to move the seat.
- **2 Height Adjustment**Pull up or push down the switch to raise or lower the seat.
- **3 Seat-back Angle Adjustment**Push forward or pull backward the switch to change the angle.

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seat



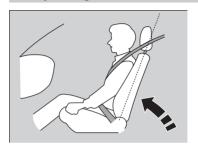
- Horizontal Position Adjustment Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.
- 2 Seat-back Angle Adjustment
  Pull up the lever to change the angle.
- (3) Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)
  Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

#### ■ Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued 217

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

## **AWARNING**

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

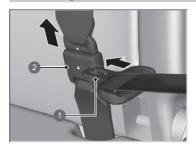
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

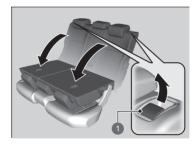
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

#### **Rear Seats**

## ■ Folding Down the Rear Seats



- Latch Plate
- 2 Anchorage Buckle



Release Lever

#### **Except Australian models**

- **1.** Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
- **2.** Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
  - Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage\*

#### All models

- **3.** Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
- **4.** Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

∑Folding Down the Rear Seats

## **AWARNING**

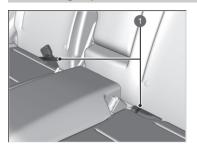
Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

## ■ Folding Up the Rear Seat



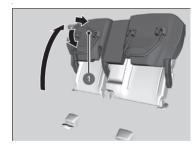
Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

## ■ Lifting up the seat cushion

#### Except Australian models

**1.** Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.

1 Loop



Seat Leg

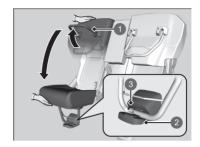
#### All models

- **2.** Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
- **3.** Pull up the rear seat cushion.
- **4.** Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it

#### ∑Folding Up the Rear Seat

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.



- Seat Leg
- Ploor Guide
- 3 Latch

## ■ Putting the seat in the original position

- **1.** Hold the seat cushion in place with one hand, then unlock it by pulling up the seat leg fully with your other hand.
  - ► Hold the seat cushion firmly, as it may abruptly fall when you unlock it.
- **2.** Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

## **Rear Seat Reminder**

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

#### 

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

**▶** How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

# **Maintain a Proper Sitting Position**

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

## **AWARNING**

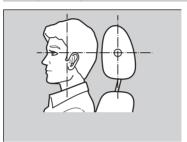
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## **Head Restraints**

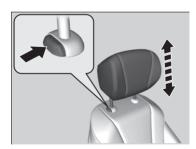
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

## Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rearimpact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

∑Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

## **AWARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre\* back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

# **To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

#### ○ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

#### To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

#### To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

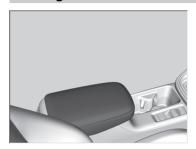
## **AWARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## **Armrest**

# ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

# **■** Using the Rear Seat Armrest

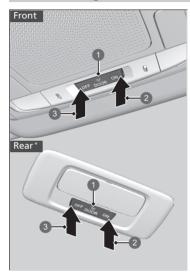


Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

## **Interior Convenience Items**

# **Interior Lights**

## ■ Interior Light Switches



Door Activated Position

2 On

Off

#### ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### **■** Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### **≥**Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

#### Except Australian models

Settings\* P. 136

#### Australian models

► How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 316

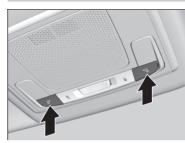
The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

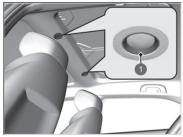
To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

## ■ Map Light Switches



#### **■** Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.



Touch

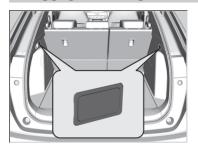
## ■ Rear seat\*

The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

#### Map Light Switches

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the buttons or touch the map lights\*.

# ■ Luggage Area Lights



The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

# **Storage Items**

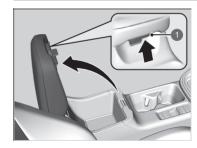
#### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

## ■ Console Box

M Knob



Pull the knob to open the console box.

#### Solove Box

# **AWARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

## ■ Beverage Holders



## **■** Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



# ■ Front door side beverage holders

Are located on both of front door side pockets.



# ■ Rear door side beverage holders Are located on both of rear door.

#### ■ Beverage Holders

#### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



## ■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

## ■ Coat Hooks

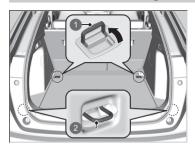


There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

#### ○ Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Tie-down Anchorages



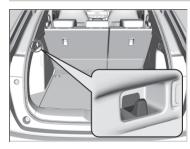
The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

#### ∑Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

- Anchorages
- 2 Anchorages

## ■ Luggage Hook



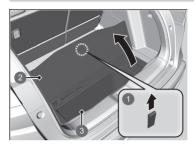
The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

#### ∑Luggage Hook

#### NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook

## ■ Under-floor Storage Area



Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.

- Strap
- 2 Luggage Floor Lid
- 3 Luggage Floor Box

**≥** Under-floor Storage Area

# **AWARNING**

Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.

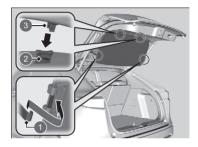
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

#### Do not drive with the lid upright.

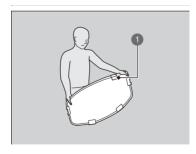
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

## ■ Luggage Area Cover\*

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.



- Hooks
- 2 Tab
- Guide



1 Tag

#### ■ To remove the luggage area cover

- 1. Open the tailgate.
- **2.** Remove the luggage area cover from hooks on both sides.
- **3.** Remove the cover from the guide while keeping the tab depressed.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

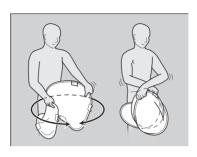
## ■ To store the luggage area cover

**1.** Hold the corner near the tag on the cover.

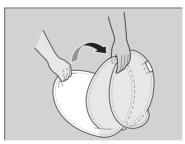
#### ■Luggage Area Cover\*

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

When removing the luggage area cover, hold it firmly with your hands as it may open vigorously. Carefully check the surrounds and slowly open the cover while holding it firmly with both hands.



**2.** Hold both corners of the luggage area cover with your arms crossed one on the other and fold the cover.



**3.** Bring both circular halves together in perfect alignment.



**4.** Store the luggage area cover in the back pocket of the front seat while keeping it firmly pushed by hand.

# **Other Interior Convenience Items**

## ■ Sun Visor



The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

## Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



## ■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

#### 

#### NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

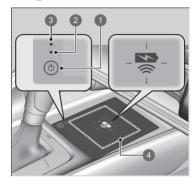
To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Continued 239

## Wireless Charger\*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



- **1** டு (Power) Button
- 2 Green Indicator
- 3 Amber Indicator
- 4 Charging Area

- 1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (b) (power) button.
  - ► When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
- **2.** Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
  - ➤ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
  - ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
- **3.** When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
  - ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger\*

## **ACAUTION**

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

#### ■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta- neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where 👺 is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

#### Wireless Charger \*

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

#### NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and @ marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

#### Wireless Charger \*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the tailgate are closed
- to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.



#### Burn risk:

Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge. The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

## Heated Steering Wheel\*



The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

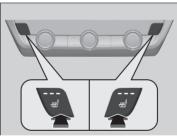
#### ➤ Heated Steering Wheel\*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

#### Front Seat Heaters\*



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

∑Front Seat Heaters \*

## **AWARNING**

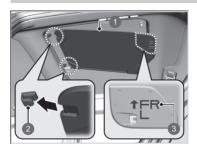
Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lowerlimb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

#### ■ Rear Sunshades\*



# ■ Rear sunshades Installation

- 1. Insert the front side into the hooks.
  - ► Install the rear sunshade as **↑FR** mark towards front.

- Rear Sunshade
- 2 Hooks
- **3** ↑FR Mark



1 Lock

- 2. Push up the rear side and lock.
  - ► Push the rear sunshades until you hear a click

#### ≫ Rear Sunshades \*

Park the vehicle in a safe place before installing and removing the rear sunshades. Also, make sure the rear sunshades are securely latched back into place before driving.

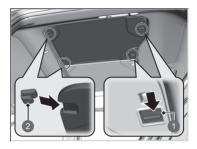
Put the removed rear sunshade in the case and store it in the luggage area.



Case

To prevent rear sunshades damage, follow the instruction below.

- Do not place things on top of the case.
- Exercise care so that things around will not hit the case.



- 1 Lever
- 2 Hooks

### ■ Rear sunshades Removal

- **1.** Push and hold the lever inside and pull down the rear sunshades.
- **2.** Pull out the rear sunshades rearwards and remove it.

# **Climate Control System**

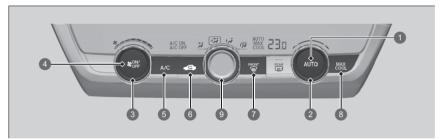
# **Using Automatic Climate Control**

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as guickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

- **1.** Press the **AUTO** button.
- 2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
- 3. Press the SON (on/off) button to cancel.

#### Models without SYNC button



- **1 AUTO** Button
- 2 Temperature Control Dial
- 3 Fan Control Dial
- **4 ON/OFF** Button
- **5** A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
- 6 (Recirculation) Button
- (Windscreen Demister) Button
- MAX COOL Button

- MODE Control Dial
  - 🛪 Air flows from dashboard vents
  - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
  - Air flows from floor vents
  - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

#### 

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

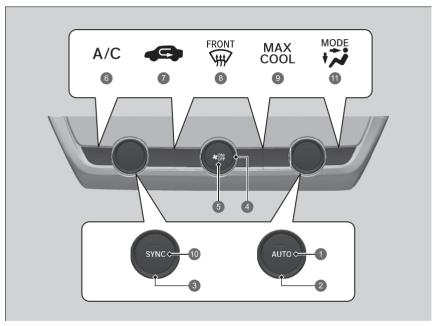
#### Models without max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

The High Voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

Continued 247

#### Models with SYNC button



Because buttons and layouts vary depending on the models, them used in this manual may differ from your vehicle.

#### ∑Using Automatic Climate Control

#### Models with max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button (indicator on\* or **MAX COOL** is appeared\*).

#### All Models

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit,  ${\bf Lo}$  or  ${\bf Hi}$  is displayed.

Pressing the MONT button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

- **1 AUTO** Button
- Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- 3 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
- A Fan Control Dial
- **6** ON/OFF Button
- **6** A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
- (Recirculation) Button
- (Windscreen Demister) Button
- MAX COOL Button\*
- **(D) SYNC** (Synchronization) Button

#### **11** MODE Control Button

- 🛪 Air flows from dashboard vents
- Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
- [in Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

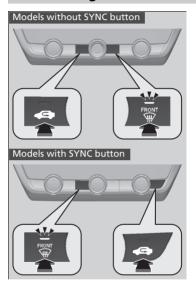
#### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



#### Except Australian models

- **1.** Pressing the button to turn the air conditioning system on.
- **2.** Select the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.
- **3.** Press the button to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

#### Australian models

Pressing the witton turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

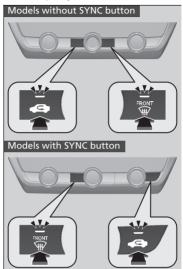
#### Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

# For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



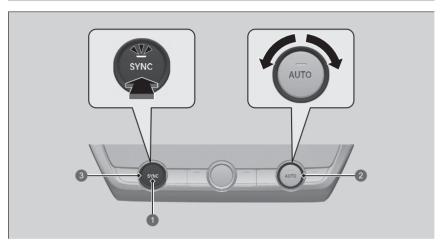
- **1.** Press the button.
- **2.** Press the button (indicator on).

#### ∑To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Continued 251

## Synchronization Mode\*



- SYNC button
- Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- 3 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

- 1. Press the **SYNC** button.
  - ▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
- 2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

#### Synchronization Mode \*

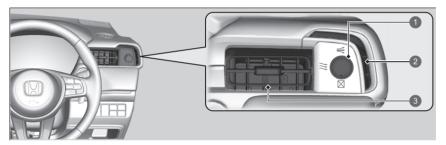
When you press the  $\widehat{\mbox{\begin{tabular}{c} $\blacksquare$}}$  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

## ■ Selecting the Desired Air Outlet

You can select the desired air outlet by turning the dial to the respective position.

- selects outlet 2.
- selects outlet 3.
- selects blockage of both 2 and 3.



- 1 Dial
- 2 Air Outlet
- Air Outlet

## **Automatic Climate Control Sensors**



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





Nudio System	256
Display Audio*	258
Audio Error Messages*	342
General Information on the Audio	
System*	343
Refuel Recommend*	349

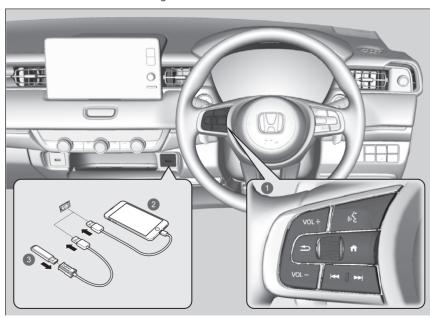
\* Not available on all models 255

## **Audio System**

## **About Your Audio System\***

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

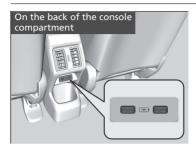


- Remote Controls
- iPod
- 3 USB Flash Drive

■ About Your Audio System \*

iPod®, iPhone® and iTunes® are trademarks of Apple Inc

### **USB Ports\***



# ■ On the back of the console compartment

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices

➤ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

#### **≫USB Ports\***

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

#### USB charge

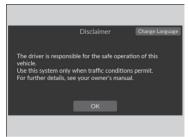
The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless the device requests. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

## Display Audio\*

## **Start Up**

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.





Select **OK**.

- ► If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ► If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
- To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)
- **1.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- 2. Select Honda HFT from your phone.
  - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select Search for Devices, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ► If you check the box with Do not show this again, this screen will not be displayed.

## **Basic Operation**

## Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



- All Apps
- 2 Status Icons
- App Shortcut Icons
- Arrow
- **5** \* Display Mode Icon

- **6** Mode Change Switch Icons
- **8 VOL/ (b) AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
- (Back) Button
- (Home) Button

All Apps: Displays the all apps.

**Status Icons**: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected

phones, etc. in the header area.

**App Shortcut Icons**: Display the app shortcut icons.

**Arrow**: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.

\* Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select

\*) once and select or to make an adjustment.

**Mode Change Switch Icons**: Display icons to change the mode directly.

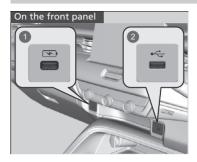
[◄◄ / ▶► (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.

**VOL/ (b) AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.

(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.

(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

#### **USB Ports**



- Only for charging devices
- Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones

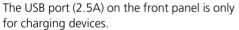
### ■ On the front panel ( •<--)



The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2 0 Standard

### ■ On the front panel ( )



You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

## ■ On the back of the console compartment

These USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

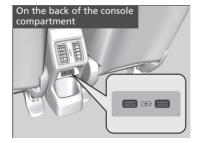
#### ■USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

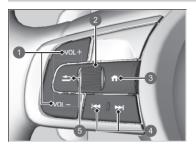
#### USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.



#### Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

- **1 VOL** +/**VOL** − (Volume) Buttons
- 2 Left Selector Wheel
- (Home) Button
- **4** ✓ / ►► (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- (Back) Button

VOL +/VOL − (Volume) Buttons

**Press VOL** +: To increase the volume.

**Press VOL** —: To decrease the volume.

#### **Left Selector Wheel**

• When selecting the audio mode

Press the  $\boxed{\text{res}}$  (home) button, then roll up or down to select  $\boxed{\text{p}}$  (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

#### >> Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

#### Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/Bluetooth® Audio

▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

## |◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

• When listening to the radio

**Press** To select the next preset radio station.

**Press** To select the previous preset radio station.

**Press and hold** To select the next strong station.

**Press and hold** To select the previous strong station.

- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, Bluetooth® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  - ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

**Press** To skip to the next song.

**Press** To go back to the previous song.

• When listening to a USB flash drive

**Press and hold** To skip to the next folder.

**Press and hold** To go back to the previous folder.

• When listening to an iPod:

**Press and hold** To skip to the next song.

**Press and hold** To go back to the previous song.

## **Audio/Information Screen**

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



>> Audio/Information Screen

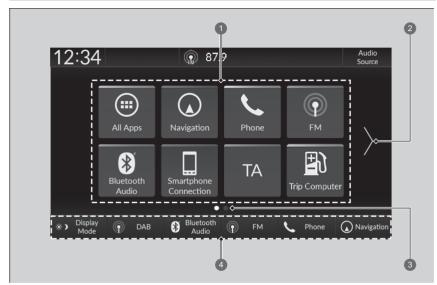
#### **Touchscreen Operation**

- Use simple gestures including touching, swiping, and scrolling to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 309

## ■ App Shortcut Function



- App Shortcut Icons
- 2 Arrow
- 3 Page Indicator
- Mode Change Switches

#### ■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

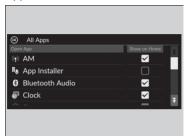
#### ■ App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Press the <u>fi</u> button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

## ■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



- 1. Press the toutton.
- 2. Select 
  All Apps.
- **3.** Select the box checked on the desired apps.

#### ∑To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

**Defaulting All the Settings** P. 322

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 322

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

### ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



- 1. Press the toutton.
- **2.** Select and hold an icon.
  - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 4. Select Done.
  - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

#### ∑To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

#### ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
  - ► The icon is removed from the home screen.
- 4. Select Done.
  - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

#### ∑To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select Tips to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

#### ■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.



Mode Change Switches

- **1.** Press the toutton.
- 2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
  - ➤ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
- 4. Select Done.
  - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

#### ∑To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

#### ■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

- 12:34 

  © 87.9

  Audio Soute

  Phone
  FM

  TA

  The Computer

  Process

  The Computer

  The Co
- **1.** Select the system status icon.
- ▶ The status area appears.
- 2. Select an item to see the details.
- **3.** Press the button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** on the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

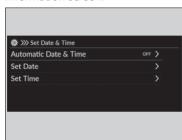
## **■ Limitations for Manual Operation**

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## **Clock Setup**

## Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select Date & Time.
- 5. Select Set Date & Time.
- **6.** Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:

- 7. Select Set Date.
- 8. Select ▲/▼.
- **9.** Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:

- 7. Select Set Time.
- **8.** Select **▲**/▼.
- **9.** Select **Save** to set the time.

#### ■ Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/ information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or All Apps.

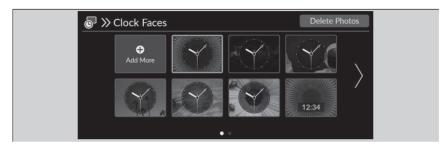
- 1. Touch the clock on the screen.

  The clock screen of the face-type appears.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Date & Time.
- 4. Select Set Date & Time.
- 5. Select Automatic Date & Time, then select OFF.
- 6. Select Set Date or Set Time.
- 7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting  $\blacktriangle/\blacktriangledown$ .
- 8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.

**System** P. 310

## Clock Wallpaper Setup



### **■** Import clock wallpaper

- 1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
  - USB Ports P. 261
- 2. Press the button.
- 3. Select Clock.
- 4. Select Settings.
- 5. Select Clock Faces.
- 6. Select Add More.
  - The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
- **7.** Select a desired picture to import.
  - ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
- 8. Select OK.
  - ► The selected pictures are displayed.
- 9. Select Transfer.
  - ► It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

#### 

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
   Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

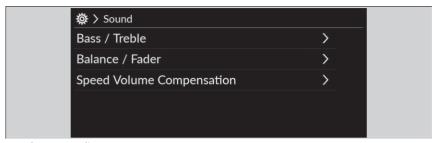
### ■ Select clock wallpaper

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Clock Faces.
- **5.** Select a desired picture to set.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
- 6. Select Save.
  - ▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

### ■ Delete clock wallpaper

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Clock Faces.
- 5. Select Delete Photos.
- **6.** Select a desired picture to delete.
  - ► Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
- 7. Select OK.
  - ► The selected pictures are displayed.
- 8. Select Delete.
  - ► It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

## **Adjusting the Sound**



- 1. Select an audio source.
- 2. Select Sound.
- **3.** Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- Bass / Treble: Treble, Midrange, Bass
- Balance / Fader: Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)

#### ■ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.

- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

## **Display Setup**

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes.

## ■ Switching Display Mode Manually



Select 🔆 🕽 (Display Mode).

- ► The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
- ➤ Select or to adjust the brightness.

#### Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

- 1. Press the toutton.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select **Display**.
- 4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.



## **System Updates**

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device

## How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
  - ► The system will check for updates.
  - ► If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon. 

    ► Status Area P. 270
- 3. Select Download.
  - A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
- 4. Select Install Now or Install While Vehicle Off.
  - A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

#### 

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

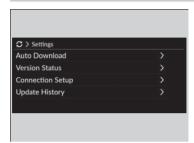
Your download will be cancelled if:

- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

## System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- Auto Download
- Version Status
- Connection Setup
- Update History

### ■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Auto Download.
- 5. Select the access point, then select Allow.
  - ▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Block**.

### ■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Version Status.

### **■** Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

- 1. Press the toutton.
- 2. Select System Updates.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Connection Setup.
- **5.** Select **OK**.
- 6. Select Change Mode.
- 7. Select Network.
  - ► If the vehicle's Wi-Fi is turned off, select **OFF**.

#### ■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

- **1.** Press the toutton.
- 2. Select System Updates.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- **3.** Select **Settings**.
- 4. Select Update History.

## ■ How to Update Wirelessly

### ■ Wireless connection mode setup

- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Connection Setup.
- 5. Select OK.
- 6. Select Change Mode.
- 7. Select **Network**.
  - It will return to the network list
- 8. Select an access point from the network list.
  - ▶ If the audio system requires a password, enter a password.
- 9. Select Connect.

### ■ How to update

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
  - ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
- 3. Select via Wireless.
- 4. Select Download.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
- 5. Select Install Now or Install While Vehicle Off.
  - A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

## How to Update with a USB Device

### ■ Download the update files from the server

- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Other Methods.
- 4. Select Via USB.
  - A notification appears on the screen.
- **5.** Connect a USB device into the USB port.
  - ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.

USB Ports P. 261

- **6.** Remove the USB device from the USB port.
- 7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
  - ► Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to https://usb.honda.com for instructions.

#### ■ Update the audio system

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select System Updates.
- 3. Select Other Methods.
- 4. Select Via USB.
  - A notification appears on the screen.
- **5.** Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
  - A notification appears on the screen.

USB Ports P. 261

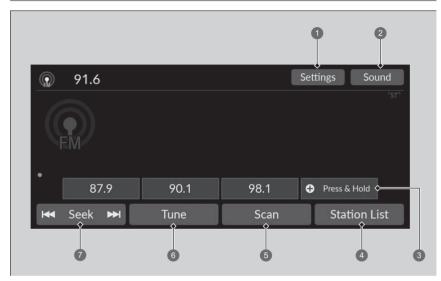
- 6. Select Install Now.
  - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

#### ■ How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

## **Playing FM/AM Radio**



- Settings Icon
- Sound Icon
- Preset Icons
- 4 Station List Icon

- **6** Scan Icon
- **6** Tune Icon
- Seek Icon

## Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.

To store a station:

- **1.** Tune to the selected station.
- **2.** Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
  - ► Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

## Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- **1.** Select **Station List** to display a list.
- 2. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- **1.** Select **Station List** to display a list.
- 2. Select Refresh.

#### Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the button.

### Seek

Selects or by to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

#### 

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select 
(audio) on the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 262

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

### Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 275

## ■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select Tune.

- **2.** Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
- **3.** Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

#### 

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.5 to 108.0MHz.



Select **■** or **▶** to tune the radio frequency.

On-screen Keyboard

### Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

#### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

- **1.** Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- 2. Select the station.

### **■** Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- **1.** Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- 2. Select Refresh.

### ■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

**To turn the function on:** Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select TA again.

#### 

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

#### ∑Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

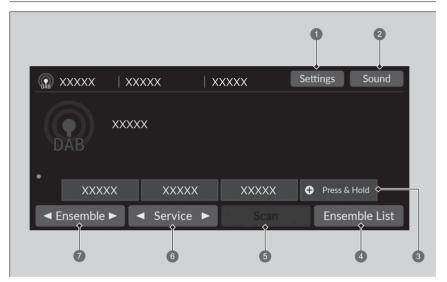
## Settings

Changes the RDS settings.

- 1. Settings.
- 2. Select an option.
- TA-Information: Turns on and off the traffic information. (ON/OFF\*1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON/OFF**\*1)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON**\*1/**OFF**)
- NEWS: Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (ON/ OFF\*1)

287

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



- Settings Icon
- Sound Icon
- Preset Icons
- 4 Ensemble List Icon

- Scan Icon
- **6** Service Icons
- Ensemble Icons

### ■ Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.

To store a service:

- 1. Tune to the selected service.
- **2.** Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
  - ► Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

### Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

- 1. Select Ensemble List to display a list.
- 2. Select the ensemble.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

- 1. Select Ensemble List to display a list.
- 2. Select Refresh.

### Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.

- **1.** Select **■** to **▶** the tune ensemble.
- 2. Select and hold or to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

## Service

Tunes the service component.

To tune it, select **◄** or **▶** 

#### 

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select (audio) on the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 262

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the button.

### Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 275

# Settings

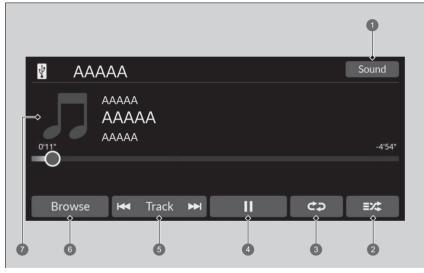
Changes the DAB settings.

- 1. Settings.
- 2. Select the option you want to change.

# Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 261



- Sound Icon
- Shuffle Icon
- Repeat Icon
- Play/Pause Icon

- Track Icons
- 6 Browse Icon
- Cover Art

#### 

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 342

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.

Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

### ■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

- 1. Select Browse.
- 2. Select a search category.
- **3.** Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

### ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

### **■** Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

#### Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

#### Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

#### ■ To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued 291

# **■** How to Change a Song

You can select  $\blacksquare$  or  $\blacksquare$  to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

### Sound

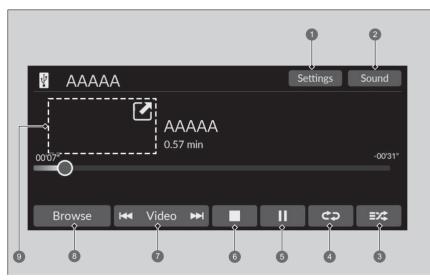
You can adjust the sound settings.

**■ Adjusting the Sound** P. 275

# Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 261



- Settings Icon\*
- Sound Icon
- Random Icon
- 4 Repeat Icon
- S Play/Pause Icon

- 6 Stop Icon\*
- **☑** Track\*/Video\* Icons
- 8 Browse Icon
- Over Art\* (Playing a music)/ Mini Player\* (Playing a video)

#### 

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.

When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC\*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE

When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/ WMV

<sup>\*1:</sup> Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

### ■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

- 1. Select Browse.
- 2. Select Current Playlist, Music, or Video.
- **3.** Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

#### ▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

■ General Information on the Audio System\* P. 343

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**■ iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 342

### How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

#### ■ Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

#### Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

#### Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

### ■ When playing a video file\*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

[☑]: Select [☑] to shrink a video screen. Select [☑] to expand a video screen.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

# How to Change a File

Track\*/Video\* Icons

You can select or by to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

### Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 275

### Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

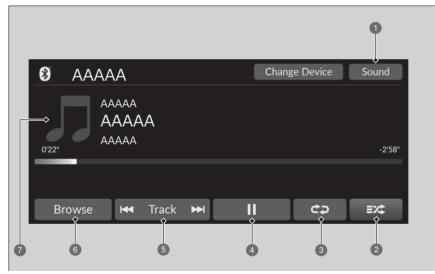
- 1. Settings.
- 2. Select an option.
- Image Settings: Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select Default. (Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/ Tint).
- Aspect Ratio: Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (Original/ Normal\*1/Full/Zoom)
- Overlay Clock Location: Changes the clock display layout. (Upper right\*1/ Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF)

# Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 330



- Sound Icon
- Shuffle Icon
- Repeat Icon
- 4 Play/Pause Icon

- **6** Track Icons
- **6** Browse Icon
- Cover Art

#### 

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

Phone Setup P. 330

Continued 297

### ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

- **1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
  - Phone Setup P. 330
- 2. Select the Bluetooth® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

#### Shuffle

- (shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.
- (shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

#### Repeat

- (repeat off): Repeat mode to off.
- (repeat song): Repeats the current song.
- (repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

#### ■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

# Searching for Music

- 1. Select Browse.
- **2.** Select a search category.
- 3. Select an item.
  - ► The selection begins playing.

#### ∑To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.

Phone Setup P. 330

#### Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

# Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

■ Adjusting the Sound P. 275

### Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

### ■ Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



- 1. Press the to button.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select Connections.
- 4. Select Wi-Fi.
- 5. Select OK.
- **6.** Select **Change Mode**.
- 7. Select **Network**.
  - ► If you want to turn off the Wi-Fi mode, select **OFF**.
- **8.** Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
  - ➤ To add a new network or select the saved networks, select **Options**.
  - ► If Options is selected, Add Network and Saved Networks can be registered.

#### 

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.



#### ○ Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the picon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

#### Status Area P. 270

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

# **Apple CarPlay**

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Ports P. 261



Apple CarPlay

#### 

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

**Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 303

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 330

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

### Apple CarPlay Menu



#### Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

#### Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

### Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone

#### Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

#### • Honda

Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

• 🗏

Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen.

• ===

Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

#### ■ Apple CarPlay

# Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

### Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

## Enabling Apple CarPlay

### ■ Connecting Apple CarPlay using the USB cable to the USB port

- 1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
  - USB Ports P. 261
  - ► The confirmation screen will be displayed.
- 2. Select Yes.
  - ▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu

#### ■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

- 1. Pair and connect the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. 

  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330
- **2.** Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
  - ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
- 3. Select Connect.
  - ▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

#### Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings →

Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

### ○ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

Wireless Apple CarPlay and Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.

Continued 303

# ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the 🖟 (talk) button to activate Siri.



**1** ്ട്ര (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

#### **≥**Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

### **Android Auto**

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

- USB Ports P. 261
- **▶ Auto Pairing Connection** P. 307



Android Auto

#### >> Android Auto

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

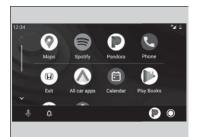
USB Ports P. 261

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 330

Continued 305

#### Android Auto Menu



### Maps

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

### • Play Music

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

#### Phone

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

- Exit
- 🌓

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

• 🛕

You can check Android notifications.

• (Android Auto Home)
Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

#### >> Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

# Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

### Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

#### **■** Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

#### Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Select General Settings →
Smartphone Connection → Android Auto →
Select device

#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued 307

### ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the 🖟 (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



**1** ME (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice. Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

#### **≥** Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the ucon in the lower-left corner of the screen.

### **Customized Features**

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System ≥** P. 310
- Smartphone Connection **▶** P. 312
- Connections ▶ P. 313
- **Display ≥** P. 314
- **Sound** ▶ P. 314
- **Camera** P. 315

#### ○ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

Continued 309

# **■** System

Customizable Features		tures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Automatic Date & Time	Selects <b>ON</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select <b>OFF</b> to cancel this function.	ON*1/OFF
	Set Date & Time	Set Date	Adjusts date.  Adjusting the Clock P. 272	Day/Month/Year
		Set Time	Adjusts time.  Adjusting the Clock P. 272	Hour/Minute AM/PM
Data 9 Times	Time Zone  Time Zone    Color		ON*1/OFF	
Date & Time		_		
		ylight Saving	Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	ON*1/OFF
	Date Format		Select a date format.	MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY*1/ YYYY/MM/DD
	Time For	mat	Select a time format.	12-H*1/24-H

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/ information screen language separately.	English*1 See other selectable languages on the screen.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Normal*1
	System Sounds	Sets the system sound volume level.	_
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	_
System Volumes	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	_
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	_
	Default	Resets all <b>System Volumes</b> settings to default values.	
Refuel Recommend		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off.  ▶ Refuel Recommend* P. 349	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

<b>Customizable Features</b>		Description	Selectable Settings	
	Status			
	Legal Information			
Alexant	Model Number	Displays the Analysis settings it are	_	
About	Android Version	<ul><li>Displays the Android setting items.</li></ul>		
	Kernel Version			
	Build Number			
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default.  Defaulting All the Settings P. 322	Continue/Cancel	
Detail Information	App Manager	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.		

# **■** Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay.  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330	_
Apple CarPlay	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330	_
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330	_

### **■** Connections

Customizable Features		Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Change M	lode	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	Network*1/ Smartphone*2/OFF
Wi-Fi	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	_
Options	Ontions	Add Network	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	_
	Options	Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	_
		Bluetooth	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Options	Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	_
Bluetooth	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT.  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330	_
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  ▶ Phone Setup P. 330	_

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting
\*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

# **■** Display

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode*1	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode.	_
Night Mode	Display Setup P. 276	
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	_
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	_
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	_
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	_

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

### **■** Sound

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Treble		
Bass / Treble	Midrange	_	
	Bass	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.  Adjusting the Sound P. 275	_
Balance / Fader			
Speed Volume Compensation			

### **■** Camera

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Fixed Guideline	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel.  ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 491	ON*1/OFF
Rear Camera	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel.  Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 491	ON*1/OFF
Cross Traffic Monitor		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides.  ▶ Cross Traffic Monitor* P. 486	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

### ■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation Warning System ≥** P. 317
- Driver Assist System Setup 

  P. 317
- Meter setup 
  ▶ P. 319
- Keyless Access Setup 

  P. 320
- Lighting Setup 

  P. 320
- Door/Window Setup 
  ▶ P. 321
- Power tailgate setup 
  ▶ P. 321

#### ∑How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select All **Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

**▶** App Shortcut Function P. 265

### **■** Deflation Warning System

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System.  Deflation Warning System* P. 395	Calibrate/Cancel

### **■** Driver Assist System Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts.  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 406	Far/Normal* <sup>1</sup> /Near
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range.  ■ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 418	ON/OFF*1
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system.  Road Departure Mitigation System P. 448	Early/Normal/Delayed*1
Lane keep assist beep	Selects On/Off the LKAS alert for not detecting road lines.  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 436	ON/OFF*1

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Blind spot information	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert.  Blind spot information System* P. 397	Audible and visual alert*1/ Visual Alert Only
Traffic sign recognition system display	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel.  Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 461	Display*1/None
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning	Enable over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded.  Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 461	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

### ■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees.  Dutside Temperature P. 121	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A.  ■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter P. 127 ■ Speed & Time P. 129	When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B.  Range / Fuel / Trip Meter P. 127  Speed & Time P. 129	When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	Max/Mid*1/Min
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface.  ▶ Turn-by-Turn Directions P. 131	ON*1/OFF
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

### **■** Keyless Access Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Smart Entry Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	Max*1/Min
Smart Entry Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF
Smart Entry Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

### **■** Lighting Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	ON*1/OFF
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed.  ▶ Interior Lights P. 228	60sec/30sec* <sup>1</sup> /15sec
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.  Automatic Lighting Off Feature P. 195	60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in <b>AUTO</b> setting.  ▶ Headlight Integration with Wipers P. 195	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

### ■ Door/Window Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	ON/OFF*1
Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by remote.  ☑ Using the Remote Transmitter P. 162	ON*1/OFF
Auto Folding Door Mirror	Selects door mirror auto folding operation.	ON*1/OFF
Remote Window Control	Changes the settings for the remote window control function.	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

# ■ Power tailgate setup

<b>Customizable Features</b>	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless open mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	Anytime*1/When unlocked
Power open by outer handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	ON (Power/Manual)*1/OFF (Manual only)
Hands free access function	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	ON*1/OFF

<sup>\*1:</sup>Default Setting

# **Defaulting All the Settings**

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

### ■ Defaulting General Settings

- **1.** Press the button.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select Factory Data Reset.
  - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- **5.** Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
- **6.** Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
  - ► The system will reboot.

# ■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

- 1. Press the button.
- 2. Select Vehicle Settings.
- 3. Select **Default**.
- 4. Select Yes.

### Defaulting All the Settings

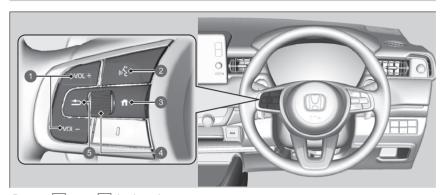
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

# **Hands-Free Telephone System**

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

#### **HFT Buttons**



- VOL +/VOL (Volume) Buttons
- ② 🖟 (Talk) Button
- (Home) Button
- 4 Left Selector Wheel
- (Back) Button

#### 

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be ON

Phone Setup P. 330

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the 🖟 button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favourite Contacts P. 335

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

**Left Selector Wheel:** Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 340

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

## 

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

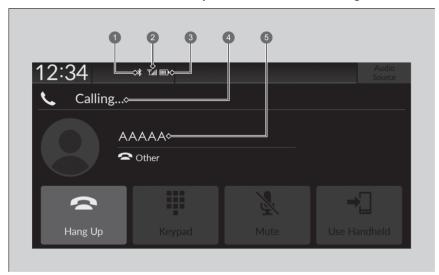
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

#### **HFT Limitations**

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



- Bluetooth® Indicator
   Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
- Signal Strength
- Battery Level Status
- 4 HFT Mode
- **5** Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

#### ► MFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/ information screen varies between phone models.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

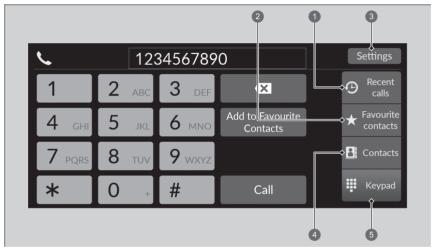
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored Favourite contacts with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

**► Favourite Contacts** P. 335

## ■ HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



- Recent calls
- Pavourite contacts
- Settings
- 4 Contacts
- 6 Keypad

#### >> HFT Menus

Some functions are limited while driving.

**Recent calls:** Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

**▶** To make a call using the recent calls P. 338

**Favourite contacts:** Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry P. 338

**Settings:** Changes the phone settings.

**▶ Phone Settings Screen** P. 329

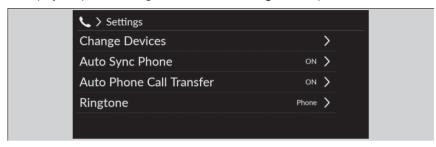
**Contacts:** Displays the phonebook of the paired phone. **▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 339

**Keypad:** Enters a phone number to dial.

**≥** To make a call using a phone number P. 339

## ■ Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



**Change Devices:** Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 330

**Auto Sync Phone:** Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

**■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls** P. 333

**Auto Phone Call Transfer:** Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

**▶ Automatic Transferring** P. 334

**Ringtone:** Selects the ring tone.

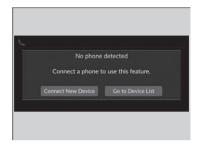
Ring Tone P. 334

## ■ Phone Setup

## ■ Bluetooth® setup

You can turn Bluetooth® function on and off.

- 1. Press the home button.
- 2. Select General Settings.
- 3. Select Connections.
- 4. Select Bluetooth.
- **5.** Select **Options**.
- **6.** Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



- To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)
- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Connect New Device.
- **3.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
- **4.** Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
  - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select Search for Devices, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
- **5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.
- **6.** Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
- **7.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
- 8. Select OK.

#### ∑Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive handsfree calls.

## Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

- The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- E: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth®* compatible devices is unavailable.



## ■ To change the currently paired phone

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Change Devices.
- **4.** Select a phone to connect.
  - ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
  - ➤ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
- **5.** Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
- 6. Select Apply.

## ■ To delete a paired phone

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Change Devices.
- **4.** Select a phone you want to delete.
- **5.** Select **Delete**.
- **6.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

#### ∑To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.



## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Auto Sync Phone.
- 4. Select ON or OFF.
  - ► The default setting is **ON**.

#### Malandaric Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

## Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Auto Phone Call Transfer.
- 4. Select ON or OFF.
  - ► The default setting is **ON**.

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

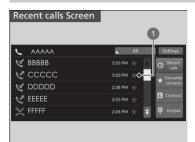
- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Ringtone.
- **4.** Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
  - ► The default setting is **Phone**.

#### Ring Tone

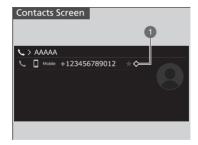
**Vehicle**: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

## ■ Favourite Contacts



Star Icon



Star Icon

#### ■ To add a Favourite contacts

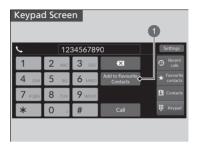
- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Recent calls, Contacts, or Keypad.

#### On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

**3.** Select the star icon.

## On the Keypad screen

- 3. Select Add to Favourite Contacts.
  - ➤ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
  - ➤ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.



#### Add to Favourite Contacts



#### ■ To edit a Favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- **4.** Select a setting you want.
- 5. Select Done.

#### ■ To delete a Favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
- 4. Select Remove.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.



# ■ To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
- 5. Select Record.
- **6.** Select **Record**, or use the <u>©</u> button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## ■ To delete a voice tag

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
- **3.** Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
- 5. Select Clear.
- **6.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

#### ○ Favourite Contacts

Avoid using duplicate voice tags. Avoid using "home" as a voice tag. It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."

## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls, Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

## ■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Recent calls.
  - ➤ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- 3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

## ■ To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Favourite contacts.
  - ▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
- 3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

#### Making a Call

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.

Press the 6 button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

#### ∑To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

**All:** Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

**Dialled:** Displays the last outgoing calls. **Missed:** Displays the last missed calls. **Received:** Displays the last incoming calls.

#### >> To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the [N] button to call the number using the voice tag.

Favourite Contacts P. 335

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.

Press the button and follow the prompts.

## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Contacts.
- 3. Select a name.
  - ➤ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- 4. Select a number.
  - Dialling starts automatically.

## ■ To make a call using a phone number

- 1. Select Phone.
- 2. Select Keypad.
- 3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
- 4. Select Call.
  - ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

#### ∑To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

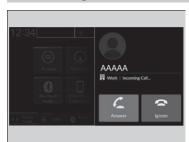
Favourite Contacts P. 335

#### ∑To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

Favourite Contacts P. 335

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

#### ■ Receiving a Call

## Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

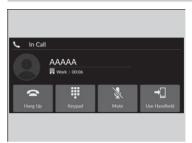
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select  $\begin{tabular}{l} \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{l} \blacksquare \end{tabular}} (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it. \end{tabular}$ 

Select right if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

## ■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.

**Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven

phone system.

Mute: Mute your voice.

**Use Handheld:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

► The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## **≥**Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## Audio Error Messages\*

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
No response from device	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the II od. Reconnect the II od.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about five seconds, then plays the next song.
Unsupported Device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

## General Information on the Audio System\*

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

## ■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

#### Model

Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015 Made for iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/ iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max

## USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.
   MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

#### 

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

#### **™USB Flash Drives**

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

## ■ Recommended Devices

## ■ MP4 File

Media	USB Fla	sh Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4	/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	

## ■ AVI File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)		.avi	
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3, WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

## ■ MKV File

Media		USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)		.mkv	
Compatible audio codec		AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

## ■ ASF/WMV File

Media	USB Fla:	sh Drive
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.	wmv
Compatible audio codec	W	MA
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

## **About Open Source Licences**

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

- 1. Select General Settings.
- 2. Select System.
- 3. Select **Detail Information**.

## **Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto**

#### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE IOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## ■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED. REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES. OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS: HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA. WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE. SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR. MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for petrol stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.

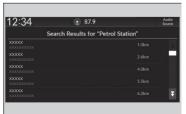


- **1.** When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
- 2. Touch the box that contains the icon.

Notification Icon



3. Select Find Petrol Station Now



- **4.** Choose a petrol station from the search screen of the navigation system.
  - ➤ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

#### ■ Refuel Recommend\*

You can turn the **Refuel Recommend** function on and off.

**Customized Features** P. 309

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the fuel level in the tank is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** or put more than 5 litres of petrol into the fuel tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select **OFF** in the settings for **Refuel Recommend**.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

\* Not available on all models



Before Driving	352
Towing a Trailer	356
Off-road Guidelines	357
When Driving	
Turning on the Power	359
Precautions While Driving	365
Transmission	367
Shifting	368
Deceleration Paddle Selector	370
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	373
Drive Mode Switch	
Hill Descent Control System	377
Adjustable Speed Limiter*	379
Intelligent Speed Limiter*	385

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 3 Agile Handling Assist	94 95 97
High Voltage Battery4	.02
londa Sensing 4	.03
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)4 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Lo Speed Follow	406 -18 -36 -48 456

# Brake System 469 Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 476 Brake Assist System 477 Emergency Stop Signal 478 Parking Your Vehicle 479 When Stopped 479 Parking Sensor System\* 481 Cross Traffic Monitor\* 486 Multi-View Rear Camera\* 491

Braking

\* Not available on all models

## **Before Driving**

## **Driving Preparation**

Check the following items before you start driving.

## Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ► Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ► Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.

## **≧** Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 529

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

#### 

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ➤ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - Load Limit P. 355
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ► They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - **Seats** P. 215
    - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 224
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - Mirrors P. 211
    - Adjusting the Steering Wheel P. 210

#### 

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

#### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

**B** Headlight Adjuster\* P. 200

#### Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - Fastening a Seat Belt P. 48
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - Indicators P. 102

## **Load Limit**

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

**Specifications** P. 598

## Australian Singaporean, and Thai models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

**Specifications** P. 598

#### Load Limit

## **AWARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

# Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

## Off-road Guidelines

## **General Information**

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

## **Important Safety Precautions**

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
   Load Limit P. 355
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Sometimes

Off-road Guidelines

Off-road Guide

## **AWARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause an crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- **Important Handling Information** P. 40
- **▶ Precautions While Driving** P. 365

## **Avoiding Trouble**

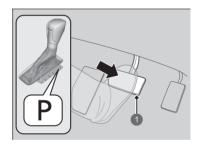
- Check Out Your Vehicle before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- Accelerating and Braking should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- Crossing a Stream Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- If You Get Stuck, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

## When Driving

## **Turning on the Power**



Electric Parking Brake Switch



Brake Pedal

- 1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

- **2.** Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ► Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

## ■Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.

**Immobilizer System** P. 182

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.



- **3.** Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.
- **4.** Check the **READY** indicator.
  - ► Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
  - ► The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
  - ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.
    - Indicators P. 102

## ∑Turning on the Power

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

■ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 572

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.

If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

You can start driving with the **READY** indicator on. If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

READY Indicator P. 107

# ■ Remote Engine Start\*

You can remotely turn the power system on using the keyless remote.

## ■ To turn the power system on



Press the <u>a</u> button, then press and hold the <u>0</u> button.

➤ Some exterior lights flash once.

1 LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.



If the power system starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

■ Remote Engine Start\*

# **AWARNING**

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.



If the power system does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

► Go within the range, and try again.

When started remotely, the power system automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **POWER** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the \(\cap \) button.

Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

## ■ Remote Engine Start\*

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

• You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the driver information interface.

#### Settings\* P. 136

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.

## ■ To turn the power system off



Press and hold the button for one second.



If the power system off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The power system will not be turned off.

► Go within the range, and try again.

## ■ Remote Engine Start\*

The power system may be turned off while it is on if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle. When it is warm outside:

 The climate control system is activated in previously selected mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.
  - Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\*
    Button P. 207

# Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the button on the keyless remote Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button.

#### When the power system is turned on in any case

- 1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
- 2. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off. Parking Brake P. 469

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into D, B when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

# Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

- **1.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- 2. Press the **POWER** button

#### Starting to Drive

#### When the power system is turned on using the button\* on the keyless remote

The power system is turned off when the transmission is taken out of P before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.

Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator is on before you start to drive.

#### ≫Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

# **Precautions While Driving**

# Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.

# In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

# In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

#### ▶ Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select  $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$  while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

## ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

#### ▶ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

#### □ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

- **▶ Important Handling Information** P. 40
- **▶ Precautions While Driving** P. 365

#### ≫In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

# **Transmission**

# Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

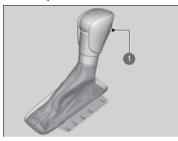
## ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

# **Shifting**

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

## **■** Shift positions



Release Button

## P Park

Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

#### **R** Reverse

Used when reversing.

#### N Neutral

Transmission is not locked.

# **D** Drive

Used for normal driving.

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is on.

## B Drive (B)

- Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

#### >> Shifting

# **AWARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death. Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

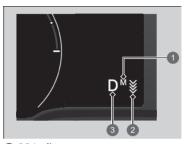
The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in  $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ .

**Driver Information Interface** P. 123 Change the shift position to □ or ℝ with the brake pedal depressed.

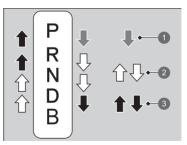
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in  $\boxed{P}$ .

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select  $\mathbb{R}$ , release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.

# ■ Shift Operation



- M Indicator
- 2 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- 3 Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)



- 1 Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
- 2 Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
- 3 Press the shift lever release button and shift.

#### Shift Operation

## NOTICE

When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position is blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures –30°C, there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

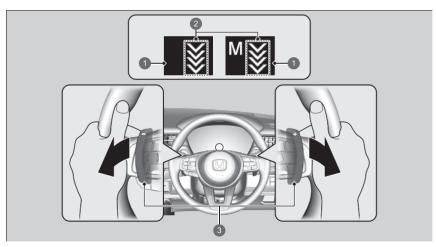
Depress the brake pedal first.

## **Deceleration Paddle Selector**

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

## Deceleration Paddle Selector Operation



- Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
- 2 Deceleration Stage
- Paddle Selector

**≥** Deceleration Paddle Selector

# **ACAUTION**

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

# ■ When the shift position is in D

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will increase temporarily, and the stage will appear on the gauge.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge will disappear when you drive at a constant speed or slow to a near stop.

## ■ When the shift position is in D and drive mode is SPORT

If you choose  ${\bf SPORT}$  mode, the rate of deceleration will increase and the stage along with  ${\bf M}$  will appear.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, change out of **SPORT** mode. When cancelled, the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge disappears.

## ■ When the shift position is in B

If you change the shift position to  ${\tt B}$ , the rate of deceleration will increase and the stage along with  ${\tt M}$  will appear.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, change the shift position to  $\boxed{\mathbf{D}}$  and change out of **SPORT** mode. When cancelled, the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge disappears.

#### Deceleration Paddle Selector

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically when:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with SPORT mode off.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.

You cannot use the deceleration paddle selector when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. If either paddle selector is operated while driving, ACC with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

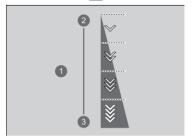
If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

Continued 371

## **■** Common operations

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the + selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the  $\overline{-}$  selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.



Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

➤ The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

- Deceleration Stage
- 2 Decrease
- Increase

# **Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System**

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 20 km/h or less.

# ■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

➤ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

#### 

The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

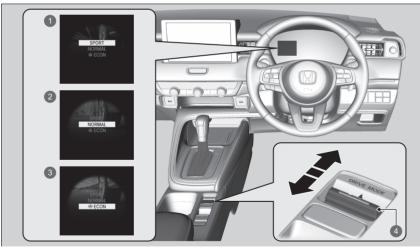
## **Drive Mode Switch**

Continuously controls your vehicle's driving performance according to the mode you select.

You can choose between three modes, **SPORT** mode, **NORMAL** mode and **ECON** mode, by moving the drive mode switch forward or back.

The currently selected mode is displayed on the driver information interface, and the display will change for each mode.

**NORMAL** mode is selected automatically every time you set the power mode to ON. However, if **ECON** mode was selected the last time you drove the vehicle, **ECON** mode will be selected when the power mode is set to ON.



- SPORT Mode
- NORMAL Mode
- **B** ECON Mode
- 4 Drive Mode Switch

#### Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.

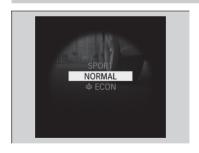
If there is a vehicle system failure, the message will appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot select any other mode.

# ■ SPORT Mode



This mode enhances the responsiveness of the acceleration.

# **■ NORMAL Mode**



This mode optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

Continued 375

# **■ ECON Mode**



This mode facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

## ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

# **Hill Descent Control System**

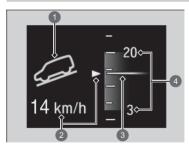
When driving down hills where engine braking is not enough to decelerate the vehicle, this system helps maintain a constant vehicle speed without needing to depress the brake pedal.

# Hill Descent Control Operating Conditions

The system operates under the following conditions.

- Driving at a speed between about 3-20 km/h.
- · Driving downhill.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed.

# Driver information interface display



- 1 The system's operating status
  - Green: Activated White: Standby
- 2 Vehicle speed display
  - White: Set speed
  - Grey: Current speed
    - ► Blinks when the vehicle speed is above the operating speed.
- 3 Current speed
- 4 Operating range of set speed

# **AWARNING**

Hill descent control cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in every situation.

When driving down a very steep hill or on slippery road surfaces, the vehicle may not be able to maintain the vehicle speed and could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

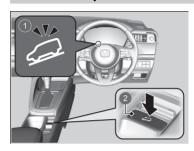
Since Hill Descent Control is not designed to increase the limits of vehicle performance, the driver must always be aware of road surface conditions and drive safely.

The brake lights automatically come on while the system is in operation.

The system may not operate when driving down a gentle slope. Check the Hill Descent Control indicator to see if the system is in operation.

The system may activate even when not driving downhill, such as when the vehicle leans while driving over uneven surfaces.

## How to Operate Hill Descent Control



- Hill Descent Control Indicator
- (Hill Descent Control)
  Button

## ■ To turn the system on

When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h, press the button to turn the system on.

► The system goes into standby mode, and the Hill Descent Control indicator (white) comes on.

When all the working conditions are met, the system activates, and the vehicle begins to maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill.

➤ The Hill Descent Control indicator (green) comes on when operating.

## ■ To adjust the set speed

Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed within the operating range. The vehicle speed at which you release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will be the set speed.

## ■ To turn the system off

Press the button to turn the system off.

#### 

Using the system repeatedly for a long time may cause the brakes to heat up and make the system go into standby mode temporarily.

Hill Descent Control is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if it was turned on the last time you drove the vehicle.

The pedals may vibrate or you may hear the system working when in operation.

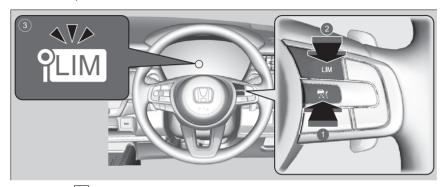
## ∑To turn the system off

When the vehicle speed is 60 km/h or more, the system turns off automatically.

# **Adjustable Speed Limiter\***

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 250 km/h.



- 1 Press the steering wheel.
- 2 If a different indicator comes on, press the LIM button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
- **3** The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge. Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

■ Adjustable Speed Limiter\*

# **AWARNING**

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

# **AWARNING**

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.

Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

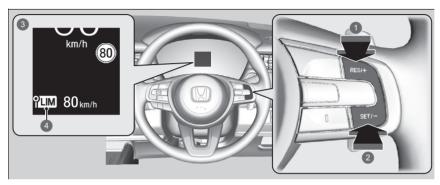
The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter: Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the statement by button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.

-Adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow -Intelligent speed limiter

## ■ To Set the Speed Limit



- 1 RES/+ Button
- 2 SET/- Button
- 3 On when the adjustable speed limiter is set.
- 4 Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)
- Take your foot off the pedal and press the SET/- button when you reach the desired speed.
  - The moment you release the **SET/–** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

#### **™**To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more on a steep descent.

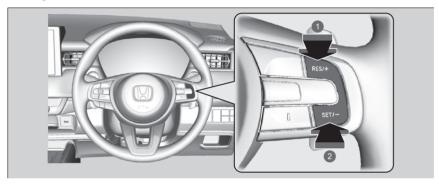
The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between km/h and mph on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P 309

# ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** buttons on the steering wheel.



- 1 To increase speed
- 2 To decrease speed
- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

# **■** Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

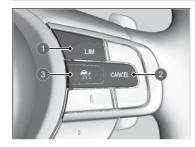
- ► The displayed limit speed blinks.
- ▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

## Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

## ■ To Cancel



- **1 LIM** Button
- 2 CANCEL Button
- Button

To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the 🔂 button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

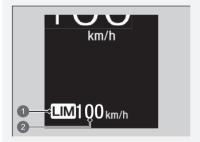
#### ∑To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Resuming the prior set speed:

Press the **CANCEL** button to display the prior set speed (gray) and press the **RES/+** button to resume the prior set speed.

If you are driving at a speed faster than the prior set speed (gray), the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed by pressing the **RES/+** button. If you press the **RES/+** button when no prior set speed (in gray) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



- Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
- Prior Set Speed (Gray)

Continued 383

#### ∑To Cancel

If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.



 Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

# **Intelligent Speed Limiter\***

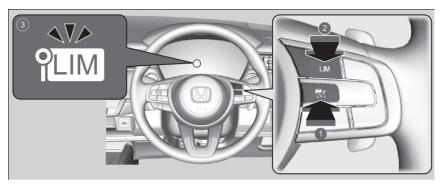
Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Traffic Sign Recognition System\* P. 461

# **AWARNING**

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.



- 1 Press the k button on the steering wheel.
- 2 If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
- **3** The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge. Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

#### 

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

#### **➡** Traffic Sign Recognition System\* P. 461

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the 😽 button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

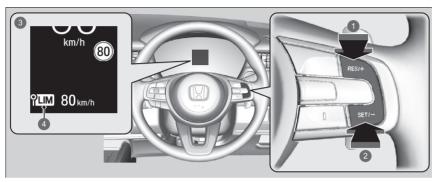
• Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the  $\fbox{\cite{limits}}$  button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

# ■ To Set the Speed Limit



- **1** RES/+ Button
- 2 SET/- Button
- 3 On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- 4 Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)
- The moment you release the **SET/** button or **RES/**+ button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

#### 

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

**Customized Features** P. 309

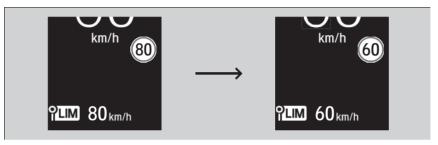
## **™**To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h, the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

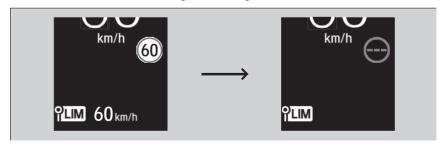
If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more.

## ■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.

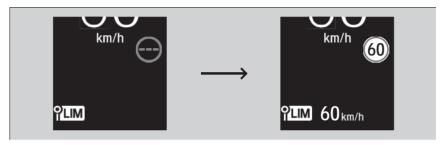


- The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



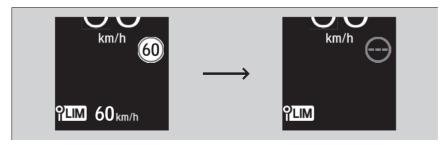
# ■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



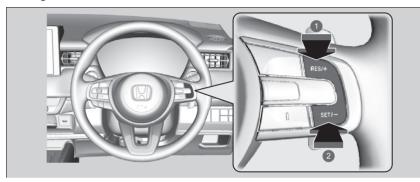
# ■ When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



# ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



- 1 To increase speed
- 2 To decrease speed
- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

#### ∑To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h.

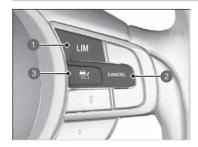
# Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

► The displayed speed limit blinks.

The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the 🔂 button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

- **1 LIM** Button
- 2 CANCEL Button
- Button

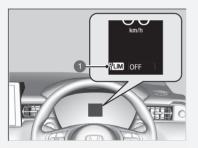
#### ∑Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

#### ∑To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



1 Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

**▶** Traffic Sign Recognition System\* P. 461

\* Not available on all models

# Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

## ■ VSA Operation



VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

#### 

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

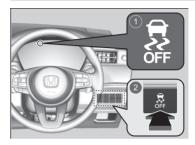
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system\*, and safety support (amber) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## VSA On and Off



- VSA OFF Indicator
- **2** 暴 Button

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the a button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ■ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the 📓 button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

# **Agile Handling Assist**

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

## ■ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

# **Deflation Warning System\***

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

1 Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

## Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

• Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

**≧ Checking Tyres** P. 529

#### Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.
- \* Not available on all models

#### Deflation Warning System \*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

**☑ Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 529

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) may come on along with a message in the gauge after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the button.
- 3. Select Vehicle Settings.



4. Select **Deflation Warning System**.



- **5.** Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.
- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

#### Deflation Warning System \*

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at initialisation.
- Tyre chains are used.

#### 

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.

During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

# **Blind spot information System\***

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Blind spot information System \*

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, the Blind Spot Information System has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the Blind Spot Information System may result in a collision.

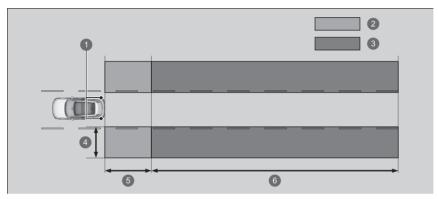
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

# **■** How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 32km/h or above.



- Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
- 2 Alert Zone 1
- 3 Alert Zone 2

Alert zone range

- 4 Approx.  $0.5 \sim 3$  m from vehicle side.
- **6** Approx. 3 m from rear bumper.
- **(** Approx. 3 ~ 25 m behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

# ■ When the system detects a vehicle



- Comes On
- 2 Blinks

Blind spot information System Alert Indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

#### Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

#### Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the Blind spot information indicator is on.

► The beeper sounds three times.

#### Blind spot information System \*

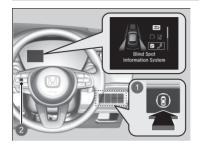
For proper Blind Spot Information System operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator does not come and the Blind Spot Information Not Available appears on the driver information interface.
- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

# Blind spot information System On and Off



- Safety Support Switch
- 2 Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the blind spot information system on and off, do the following.

- **1.** Press the safety support switch.
- **2.** Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.
  - ➤ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.
  - A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The check mark disappear and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The Blind Spot Information System will stay on in the previously selected on (checked) or off (unchecked) setting each time you start the engine.

#### Blind spot information System \*

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

Driver Information Interface P. 123

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

**■ Customized Features** P. 309

# Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The Blind Spot Information System may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.

# **High Voltage Battery**

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

#### ∑High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

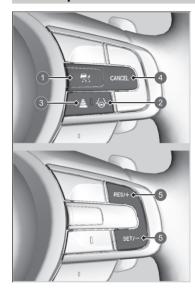
#### ■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) **▶ P.** 406
- Road Departure Mitigation System 
  ▶ P. 448
- Lead Car Departure Notification System\* 
  ▶ P. 456
- Traffic Sign Recognition System\* ▶ P. 461

#### ■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ▶ P. 418
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶ P. 436

# ■ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)



# **⊕** Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow. Or press to cancel the system.

#### **LKAS Button**

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS. Or press to cancel the system.

#### Interval Button

Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

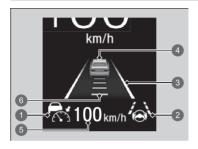
#### **A** CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow

#### RES/+ and SET/- Buttons

Press to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or to adjust the vehicle speed.

### Gauge Content



You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

- Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
  - White: The system is standby.
  - Green: The system is on.
  - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- 2 Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
  - White: The system is standby.
  - Green: The system is on.
  - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- 3 Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
  - White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
  - Green Lines: The system is on.
  - Amber Lines: Lane departure is detected.
- Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.
- **5** Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
  - White: Set Vehicle Speed
  - Gray: Prior Set Speed
- 6 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

# **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)**

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

○ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

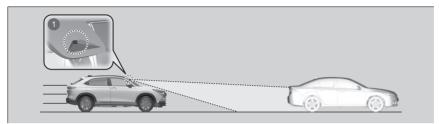
**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 411

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P 467

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

### ■ How the system works



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

#### The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with oncoming a detected vehicle when you turn right at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

#### ➤ How the system works

The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

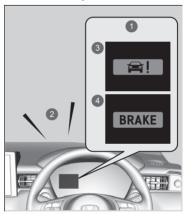
**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 411

Continued 407

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

#### ■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

► Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

- Visual Alerts
- 2 Audible Alert
- 3 Except Latin American models
- 4 Latin American models

You can change the distance (Far/Normal/Near)\* (Long/Normal/Short)\* between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through the driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

- Settings\* P. 136
- **Customized Features** P. 309
- \* Not available on all models

# **■** Collision Alert Stages

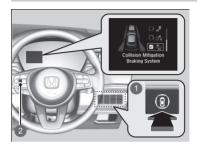
The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one	3 4 5	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in Far* or Long*, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near* or Short*, at a shorter distance than in Normal.	_
Stage two	0 0	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three	1 2	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

- Your Vehicle
- 2 Vehicle Ahead
- 3 Far\* or Long\*
- 4 Normal
- S Near\* or Short\*

\* Not available on all models

#### CMBS On and Off



- Safety Support Switch
- 2 Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

- **1.** Press the safety support switch.
- 2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.
  - ➤ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.
  - ▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the ♣ symbol changes to green when the system is on. The check mark disappear and the colour of the ♣ symbol changes to gray when the system is off

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle. ○ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

**CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 411

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

Driver Information Interface P. 123

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system\*, and safety support (amber) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

#### **CMBS Conditions and Limitations**

The system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

#### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

#### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

#### **■** Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

# ■ Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians or bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too guickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

#### ■ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

Continued 413

#### **■** Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

#### Latin American models

When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.

#### Except Latin American models

When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.

- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle
  is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right at an intersection etc.)\*1.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

<sup>\*1:</sup> When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel

#### ■ Automatic shutoff

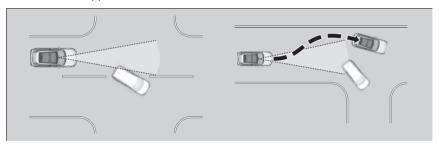
The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.). Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

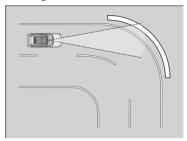
#### ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

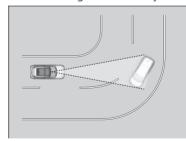
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle at an intersection, etc.



- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



• When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

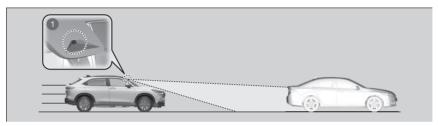


• When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



- 1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  - **No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

# **AWARNING**

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

# **AWARNING**

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

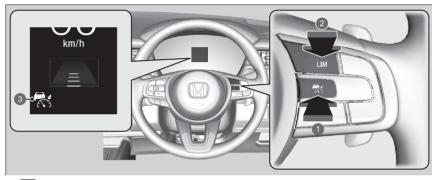
#### **Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

#### ■ How to activate the system



- Button
  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- 2 LIM Button\*
  If a different indicator comes on, press the LIM button to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- **3** The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge. ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

#### Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

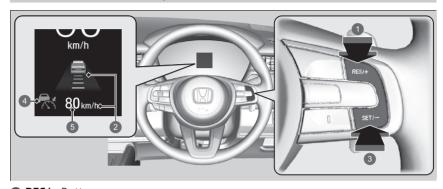
ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

# ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 426

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- $\bullet$  On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

# ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



- RES/+ Button Press and release
- 2 On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
- 3 SET/- Button
  Press and release
- 4 MI Indicator (Green)
- Set Vehicle Speed (White)

Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

#### Thai models

**CAUTION:** This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system\*, and safety support (amber) may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

#### ∑To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface\* or audio/information screen\* between km/h and mph.

- **Settings**\* P. 136
- **Customized Features** P. 309

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the RES/+ or SET/- buttons when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

- 1 Set Vehicle Interval
- 2 Set Vehicle Speed

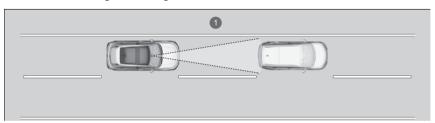
Continued 421

# ■ When in Operation

#### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

**▶** To Set or Change Following-interval P. 431



1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

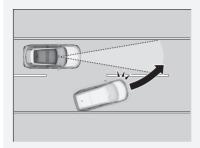


When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the front wide view camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

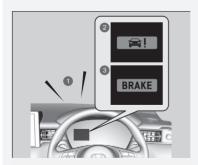
1 A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

#### When in Operation ■

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead



- Audible Alert
- Except Latin American models
- 3 Latin American models

#### ■ There is no vehicle ahead



1 A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

On steep downhill during ACC with Low Speed Follow, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

#### When in Operation ■

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

Settings\* P. 136

**Customized Features** P. 309

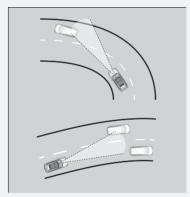
#### Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 426

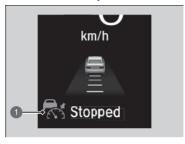
#### When in Operation ■

 ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



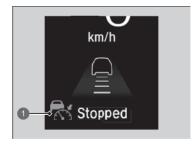
 When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

# ■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the gauge blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

1 R Indicator (Green)



resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

# **AWARNING**

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

1 Indicator (Green)

Continued 425

# ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

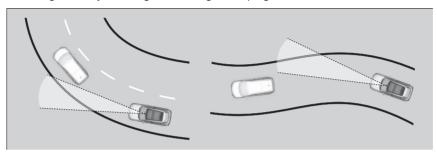
Front Wide View Camera P. 467

#### **■** Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

#### **■** Roadway conditions

• Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

#### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

# ■ Examples of conditions under which the front wide view camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

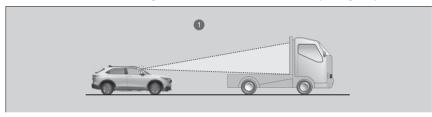
#### **■** Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- Latin American models

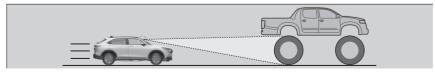
When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.

Except Latin American models

When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.



- **1** Front wide view camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

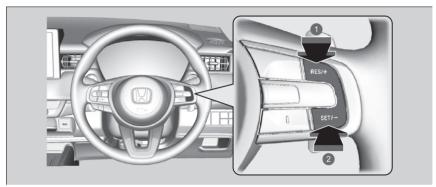


• When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

Continued 429

# ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button on the steering wheel.



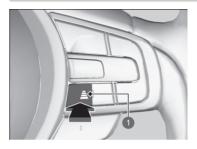
- 1 To increase speed
- 2 To decrease speed
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/-** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the RES/+ or SET/- button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

#### ∑To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **SET/**– button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

# ■ To Set or Change Following-interval



1 Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate followinginterval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued 431

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

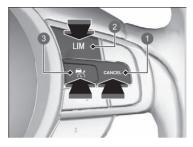
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		43.9 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

### ∑To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

# ■ To Cancel



- **1 CANCEL** Button
- 2 LIM Button\*
- Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  - ► The 🖟 indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the 🦟 indicator (white).
- Press the 🔂 button.
  - indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button\*.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
- ► The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

### ∑To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed. If the sindicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** switch, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



- 1 Indicator (White)
- Prior Set Speed (Gray)

### ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

### ∑To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the  $\boxed{\mathbb{R}}$  button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

# Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

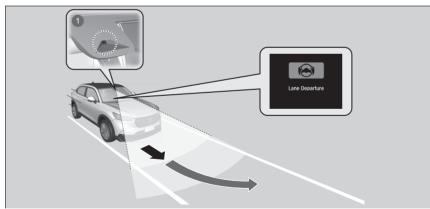
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

### ■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



1 Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

### **Important Safety Reminders**

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 444

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

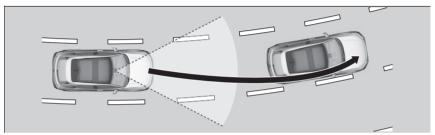
### ∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

Continued 437

# ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

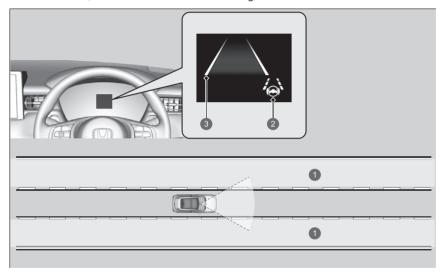


### ∑Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

# ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



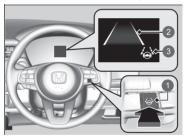
- Warning Area
- 2 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)
- 3 Lane Lines (Amber)

# When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

### ■ How to activate the system



- 1 LKAS Button
- 2 Lane Lines (white)
- 3 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (white)

- 1. Press the LKAS button
  - ► LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.

The system is standby.

► If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

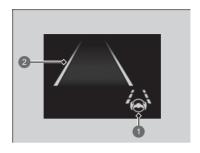
### When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the front wide view camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the front wide view camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the front wide view camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.



- 1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)
- 2 Lane Line (Green)

- **2.** Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ➤ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

# ■ To Cancel

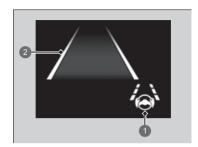


1 LKAS Button

Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Continued 441



- 1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)
- 2 Lane Lines (White)

When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the gauge change to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

# ■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ► The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  - ► Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

### ∑The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

- Settings\* P. 136
- Customized Features P. 309

## ■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

### ■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, double lane lines may appear on the screen, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may automatically be cancelled:

- The front wide view camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the front wide view camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

## LKAS Conditions and Limitations

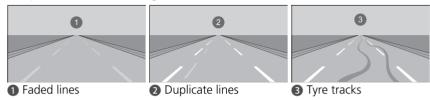
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### **■** Environmental conditions

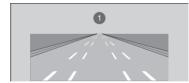
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

# **■** Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

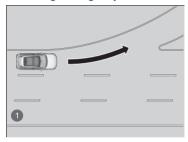


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Very wide or narrow traffic lane
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane line.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

### ■ Vehicle conditions

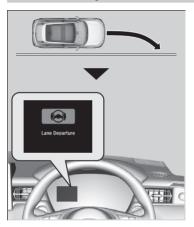
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.

\* Not available on all models 447

# **Road Departure Mitigation System**

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.

# ■ How the System Works



The front wide view camera located at the top of the windscreen monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or oncoming vehicles.

If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.

**Settings**\* P. 136

**■ Customized Features** P. 309

As a visual alert, Lane Departure message appears on the driver information interface.

### **Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

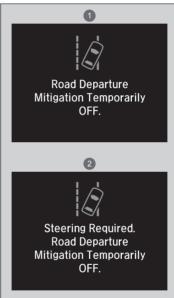
The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.

If the system operates several times without

alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily

detecting driver response, the system beeps to

stopped, and the warning sound is given only.



- Except Latin American models
- 2 Latin American models

■ Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations P 452

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Early**\*/**Narrow**\* or **Normal** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the message below will appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or oncoming vehicle. If you have selected **Delayed**\*/**Wide**\*, however, the message will only appear if the vehicle is about to cross over the outer edge of the pavement or oncoming vehicle.

Settings\* P. 136

Customized Features P. 309





After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

# How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
  - The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- ➤ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel border. The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

### ➤ How the System Activates

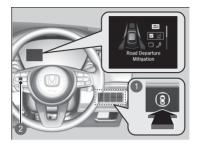
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

**▶ Indicators** P. 102

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

# ■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off



- Safety Support Switch
- 2 Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

- **1.** Press the safety support switch.
- **2.** Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.
  - ➤ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.
  - A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The check mark disappear and the colour of the symbol changes to gray when the system is off

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on (checked) or off (unchecked) setting each time you turn the power system on.

### ■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

Driver Information Interface P. 123

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system\*, and safety support (amber) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# ■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### **■** Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

# **■** Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

### **■** Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

# ■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of a oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

# **■** Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

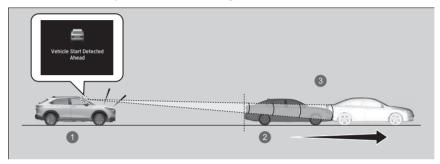
### ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

• When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

# **Lead Car Departure Notification System\***

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



- When stopped
- Vehicle ahead is stopped
- Sehicle ahead starts moving

# ■ How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

# ■ When the shift position is in D or B\*

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

# **AWARNING**

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

# ■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, Normal and Early.

Settings\* P. 136

**■ Customized Features** P. 309

In Normal mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.

In Early mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

### ∑Lead Car Departure Notification System\*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

**Settings\*** P. 136

**Customized Features** P. 309

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) is on.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 418

# **■** When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

1 Audible Alert

# ■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

#### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel where the whole vehicle may not be illuminated due to low-light conditions.
- Driving into low sunlight, such as at dawn or dusk.

### ■ Roadway conditions

 Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

### **■** Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

# ■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

### **■** Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

# **■** Examples of other limitations on system operation

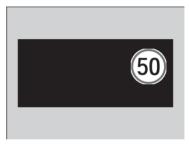
- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front

# **Traffic Sign Recognition System\***

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

# How the System Works

When the front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

### ∑Traffic Sign Recognition System\*

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera. Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.

**■ Customized Features** P. 309

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.



### ∑Traffic Sign Recognition System \*

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.

Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 467

## 

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

**■ Customized Features** P. 309

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations P. 464

# ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may not be able to recognise a traffic sign in the following cases.

### **■** Environmental conditions

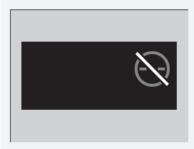
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

## **■** Roadway conditions

• Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.



## ■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged signs.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

### ■ Other conditions

• When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

- ► A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

# **Front Wide View Camera**

The front wide view camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Traffic Sign Recognition System\*, Lead Car Departure Notification System\*, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

# Front Wide View Camera Location and Handling Tips



Front Wide View Camera

This front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the front wide view camera housing. Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

### ∑Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera. Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

#### 

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the front wide view camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the front wide view camera.

If the Some Driver Assist System Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition. message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.
  - Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# **Braking**

# **Brake System**

# ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
- ► The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

#### ■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal.
- **2.** Press the electric parking brake switch.
  - ► The indicator in the switch goes off.
  - ➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

#### 

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

#### ▶ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

**If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 575

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

Continued 469

### ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

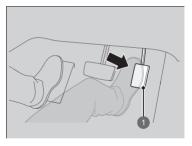
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is (red) on.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 471

#### ■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

➤ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

### 1 Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

#### ▶ Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

### ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- **1.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **2.** Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
  - ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
- **3.** Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- **4.** When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
  - Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
  - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
  - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
  - To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature while having your vehicle towed, you can follow the procedure explained below.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- **2.** Set the power mode to OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
  - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
  - ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off the automatic brake hold system.
  - ➤ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

#### Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Power system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- ABS indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

### 

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyortype car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

### ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

**Brake Assist System** P. 477

**■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 476

#### ≫Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and shifting to position  $\boxed{\mathbb{B}}$ .

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

#### Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

### **■** Turning on the system



- Automatic Brake Hold Button
- 2 Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

➤ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the power system.

### **AWARNING**

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

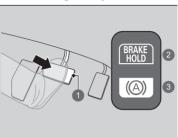
## **AWARNING**

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

### ■ Activating the system



- 1 Brake Pedal
- 2 On
- Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in  $\boxed{P}$  or  $\boxed{R}$ .

- ► The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes
- ▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

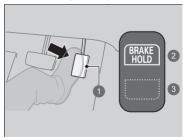
# **AWARNING**

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

### ■ Cancelling the system



Accelerator Pedal

2 On

Goes Off

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than  $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$  or  $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ . The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

► The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

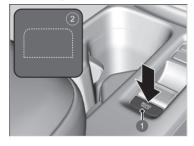
### ■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

### ■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

### ■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

► The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

- Automatic Brake Hold Button
- 2 Goes Off

#### ■ Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

₩hen Stopped P. 479

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

### ■Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the power system or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off.

In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the power system is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

# **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)**

#### ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.

While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains\*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

# **Brake Assist System**

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### **■** Brake assist system operation

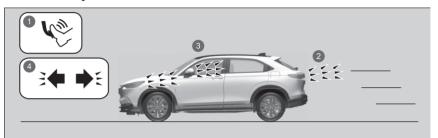
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

# **Emergency Stop Signal**

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



- Hard Braking
- 2 Brake Lights Come On
- 3 Hazard Warning Lights Flash
- 4 Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

#### Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

# Parking Your Vehicle

# When Stopped

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly.
- **2.** With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- **3.** Change the shift position to **P**.
- **4.** Turn off the power system.
  - ► The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

▶ Parking Your Vehicle

# **AWARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

Continued 479

#### When Stopped

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.

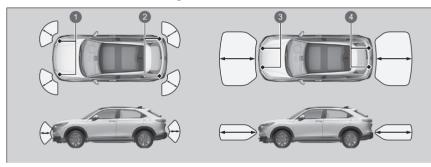
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

# **Parking Sensor System\***

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen\* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

#### **■** The sensor location and range



- Front Corner Sensors\*
- 2 Rear Corner Sensors
- Front Centre Sensors\*
- 4 Rear Centre Sensors

#### ▶ Parking Sensor System \*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

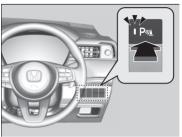
The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

### ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner\*, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ , and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner\* and front centre sensors\* start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than  $\boxed{P}$  or  $\boxed{R}$ , and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

### Australian models

### **■** Screen Operation





- Split View Off
- Split Screen Tab
- 3 Split View On

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If the parking sensor system is turned off.
- If there is a malfunction in the system.

Continued 483

### ■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Interval between	Distance between the	Bumper and Obstacle	Indicator	Driver information interface/			
beeps	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors	mulcator	Audio/information screen*			
Moderate	_	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	[Audio/information screen]			
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Amber Comes on				
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm	Amber Comes on				
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Red Comes on	Driver information interface			

<sup>\*1:</sup>At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

1 Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

### ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

- **1.** Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- 2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
- **3.** Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
- **4.** Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### ■Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ , the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

### **Cross Traffic Monitor\***

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

Cross Traffic Monitor\*

# **AWARNING**

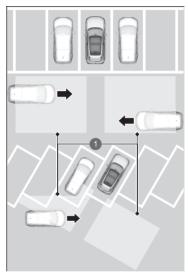
Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

### How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off P. 490 Customized Features P. 309
- The transmission is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

Radar sensors: Underneath the rear bumper corners.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

#### 

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

#### 

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.

Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

### ■ When the System Detects a Vehicle



- Arrow Icon
- 2 Normal View
- Wide View
- 4 Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

#### When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the  $\[ \]$  on the lower right changes to  $\[ \]$  in amber when the transmission is in  $\[ \]$  mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the  $\P$  comes on when the transmission is in  $\P$ , there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ , there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued 489

### ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



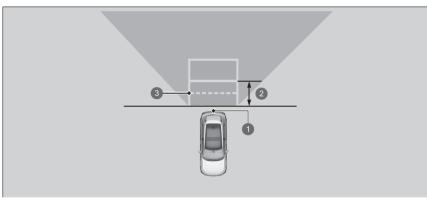
Tap to turn the system on and off. The indicator comes on with the system on. You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

**Customized Features** P. 309

### **About Your Multi-View Rear Camera**

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into  ${\bf R}$ .

# ■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



- Camera
- 2 Approx. 1 m
- 3 Tailgate open range

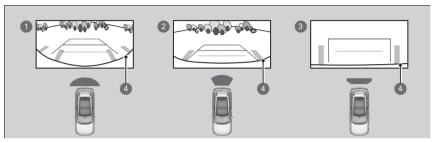
#### ■ About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



- Wide View Mode
- Normal View Mode
- 3 Top Down View Mode
- 4 Bumper
- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ , Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ .

#### 

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

**≧** Customized Features P. 309

#### **Fixed Guideline**

**ON:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into  $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$ .

**OFF:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### **Dynamic Guideline**

**ON:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**OFF:** Guidelines do not move.

# Refueling

### **Fuel Information**

### **■** Fuel recommendation

Except Thai and Malaysian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

### Malaysian models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

#### ≫Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

### **How to Refuel**



• Fuel Fill Door Release Handle



1 Cap

- Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
- 2. Turn off the power system.
- **3.** Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - ► The fuel fill door opens.
- **4.** Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

# **AWARNING**

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.



- 1 Cap
- 2 Holder

- **5.** Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
- **6.** Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
  - ➤ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
- After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
  - ► Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

# Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

# Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing  $\mathrm{CO}_2$  emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

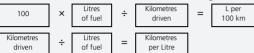
# ■ Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

- **Maintenance Schedule** P. 501
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  - Recommended Engine Oil P. 509
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

#### **≥** Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance	
Inspection and Maintenance	498
Safety When Performing Maintenance.	499
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenand	ce
Service	500
Maintenance Schedule	501
Maintenance Under the Bonnet	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet	506
Opening the Bonnet	507
Recommended Engine Oil	509
Oil Check	511
Adding Engine Oil	512

Cooling System	. 513
Transmission Fluid	
Brake Fluid	. 516
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	. 517
Fuel Filter	. 517
Replacing Light Bulbs	. 518
hecking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	524
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	. 529
Wear Indicators	. 530
Tyre Service Life	. 530
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	. 531

Tyre RotationSnow Traction Devices	
2-Volt Battery	
lemote Transmitter Care	
Replacing the Remote Battery	. 537
limate Control System Maintenance	539
Cleaning	
Interior Care	. 543
Exterior Care	. 546
Accessories and Modifications	. 550

# **Before Performing Maintenance**

# **Inspection and Maintenance**

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book\* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

Maintenance Schedule P. 501

# ■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

### **■** Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

### **■** Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - Brake Fluid P. 516
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 529
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - Replacing Light Bulbs P. 518
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **≧** Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 524

# **Safety When Performing Maintenance**

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### ■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
   Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
   Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

### **AWARNING**

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book\*.

### AWARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ► Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

### Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Continued 501

Service at the indicated distance or	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
time - whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years,									
		thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									

<sup>\*1:</sup>Sensory Method Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200	
time - whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	
Replace transmission fluid	Normal	Every 150,000 km or 6 years										
	Severe	Every 75,000 km or 3 years										
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year										
Replace fuel filter Normal		Every 180,000km										
Severe		Every 110,000km*1										
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km										
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots												
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Suspension components												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VS/	$(\mathcal{L}$											
Exhaust system				١.	١.							
Fuel lines and connections				•								
All fluid levels and condition of fluid												

<sup>\*1:</sup>It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

#### Maintenance Schedule ■ Maintenance Schedule ■

- The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
- A. Less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

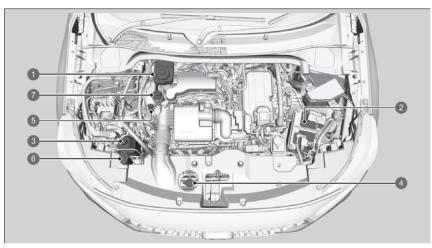
# **Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)**

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> (or 12 Mo.)			
<b>40,000 km</b> (or 24 Mo.)			
<b>60,000 km</b> (or 36 Mo.)			
<b>80,000 km</b> (or 48 Mo.)			
<b>100,000 km</b> (or 60 Mo.)			
<b>120,000 km</b> (or 72 Mo.)			
<b>140,000 km</b> (or 84 Mo.)			
<b>160,000 km</b> (or 96 Mo.)			
<b>180,000 km</b> (or 108 Mo.)			
<b>200,000 km</b> (or 120 Mo.)			

# Maintenance Under the Bonnet

### **Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet**



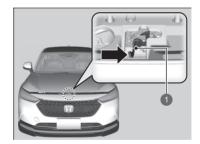
- Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
- 2 12-volt Battery
- 3 Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
- 4 Radiator Cap

- **5** Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
- **6** Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- Engine Oil Fill Cap

## **Opening the Bonnet**



- 1 Bonnet Release Handle
- Pull



1 Lever

- **1.** Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- **2.** Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - ► The bonnet will pop up slightly.

**3.** Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

#### ○ Opening the Bonnet

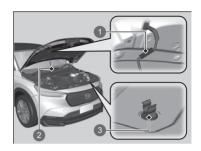
#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Continued 507



- Grip
- Support Rod
- Clamp

**4.** Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

## **Recommended Engine Oil**

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter\*.

Adding Engine Oil P. 512

#### ■ Recommended Engine Oil

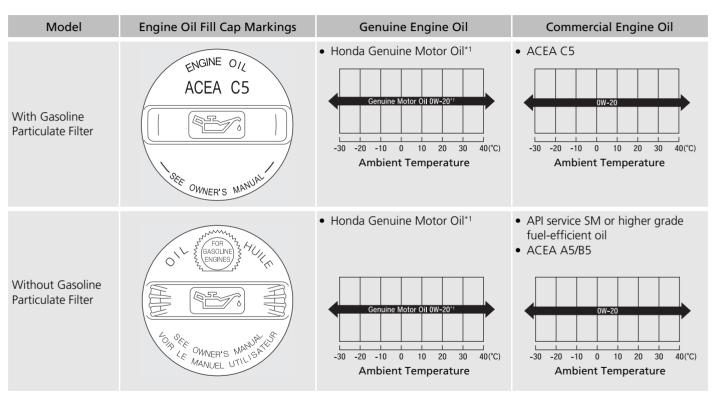
**Engine Oil Additives** 

Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

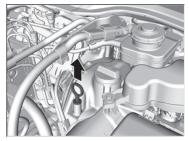


\*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

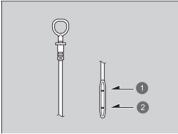
### Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



- 1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
- **2.** Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
- **3.** Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



**4.** Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

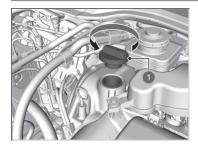
#### ≫Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Upper Mark

2 Lower Mark

# **Adding Engine Oil**



1 Engine Oil Fill Cap

- **1.** Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
- 2. Add oil slowly.
- **3.** Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
- **4.** Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### 

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

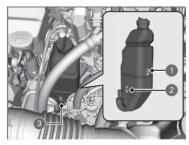
## **Cooling System**

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



- MAX
- 2 MIN
- Reserve Tank

# 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.

- **2.** Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
  - ► If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.

○ Cooling System

### **AWARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

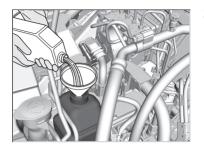
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

#### NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

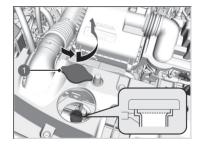
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### Radiator



Radiator Cap

- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- **3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- **4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- **5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

#### 

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

### **Transmission Fluid**

### Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid

Maintenance Schedule P. 501

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

#### >> Transmission Fluid

#### NOTICE

# Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

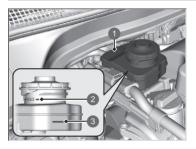
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

### **Brake Fluid**

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

- Reserve Tank
- 2 MAX
- MIN

#### Brake Fluid

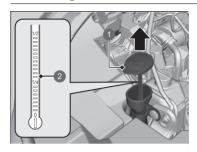
#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## **Refilling Window Washer Fluid**



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

■ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.

Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

- 1 Cap
- 2 Level Gauge

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

## **Fuel Filter**

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

# Replacing Light Bulbs

# Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Fog Lights\*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Position/Daytime Running Lights**

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## **Front Turn Signal Lights**

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

# **Active Cornering Lights\***

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

# **Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights**

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

#### 

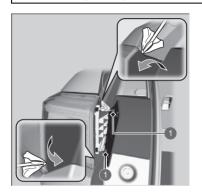
The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

## **Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs**

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

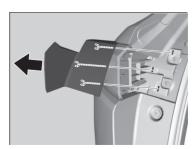
Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



- **1.** Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the upper end of the cover and the vehicle body, then remove the pin.
  - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the vehicle body.
- **2.** Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the lower end of the cover and the light assembly, then remove the pin.
  - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the light assembly.

Pins

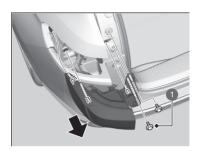


**3.** Remove the cover by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.

■Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

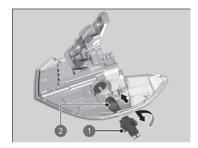
Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued 519



- **4.** Remove the bolts.
- **5.** Remove the light assembly by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.

Bolts



- **6.** Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
- 7. Insert a new bulb.

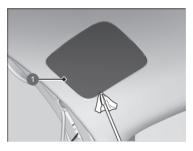
Socket

2 Bulb

## **Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs**

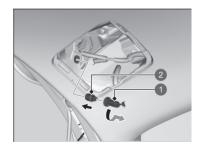
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED Back-Up Light: 16 W



- **1.** Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
  - ► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

Cover



- Socket
- 2 Bulb

# Taillights and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

**2.** Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.

3. Insert a new bulb.

## **Rear Licence Plate Light**

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

# **High-Mount Brake Light**

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

# **Other Light Bulbs**

## ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs\*

Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.

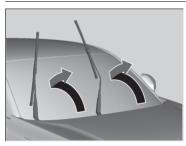
\* Not available on all models

# **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades**

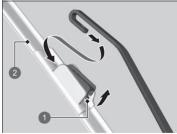
## **Checking Wiper Blades**

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

# **Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber**



**1.** Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



**2.** Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

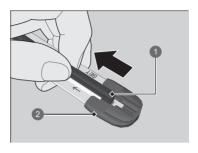
∑Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

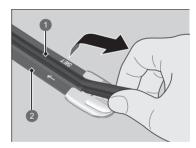


2 Holder



**3.** Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

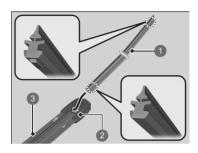
- Wiper Blade
- 2 End Cap at the bottom



- Wiper Blade
- 2 Holder

**4.** Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

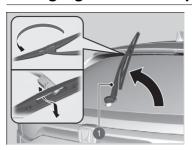
Continued 525



- Wiper Blade
- 2 Cap
- 3 Holder

- **5.** Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
- **6.** Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
- **7.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
- **8.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## **Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber**



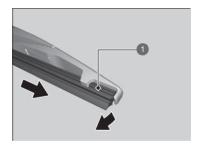
- 1. Raise the wiper arm off.
- **2.** Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

∑Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window

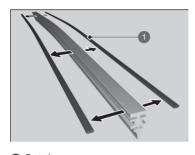
Wiper Arm



Wiper Blade

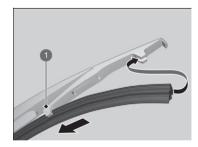
**3.** Slide the blade out of the wiper.

Continued 527



**4.** Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

Retainer



1 Holder

- **5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
  - ► Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

# **Checking and Maintaining Tyres**

## **Checking Tyres**

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

### **■** Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

**■ Wear Indicators** P 530

• Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

#### ○ Checking Tyres

### **AWARNING**

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

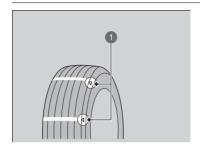
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

#### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

**Deflation Warning System Calibration**P. 395

### **Wear Indicators**



Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

### 

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## **Tyre Service Life**

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## **Tyre and Wheel Replacement**

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

∑Tyre and Wheel Replacement

### **AWARNING**

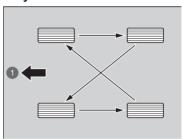
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

## **Tyre Rotation**

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

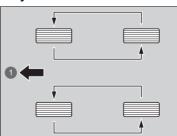
#### **■** Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Front

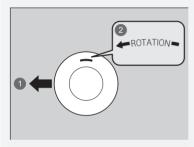
### **■** Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ∑Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



- front
- 2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

#### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

**Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 395

1 Front

### **Snow Traction Devices**

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

#### Australian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
225/50R18	RUD innove8 HYBRID 4718376

\*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

#### All models

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

### **AWARNING**

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

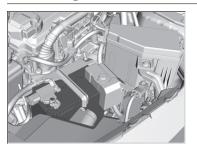
Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## 12-Volt Battery

## **Checking the 12-Volt Battery**



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

• The clock resets.

**≥ Clock** P. 150

Clock Setup P. 272

≥ 12-Volt Battery

### **AWARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

### **AWARNING**

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

#### ≥ 12-Volt Battery

#### **Emergency Procedures**

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately. Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information

# **Charging the 12-Volt Battery**

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

#### ≥ 12-Volt Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System\* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### **Remote Transmitter Care**

## **Replacing the Remote Battery**

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



### Battery type: CR2032

**1.** Remove the built-in key.



- **2.** Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with key grip.
  - ➤ Wrap the key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the remote key.
  - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

■ Replacing the Remote Battery

### **AWARNING**

#### **CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

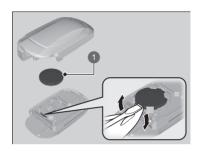
**CAUTION:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**CAUTION:** Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

**CAUTION:** Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

**CAUTION:** Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

Continued 537



Battery

- **3.** Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
  - ➤ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the remote key.

#### ■ Replacing the Remote Battery

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

According to Australian Standard;

#### **△ WARNING**

- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

# Climate Control System Maintenance

## **Air Conditioning\***

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

#### NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

- Safety Labels P. 99
- Specifications P. 598

#### Australian models



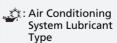
R-1234yf 0.420kg SAE J639 J2842 J2845

Honda Motor Co., Ltd.

.<sup>©</sup> POE

: Requires a qualified technician to service





\* Not available on all models 539

### **Dust and Pollen Filter**

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 501

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



**1.** Open the glove box.

1 Pull

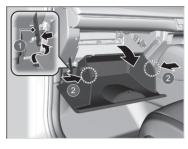
2 Handle

#### Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

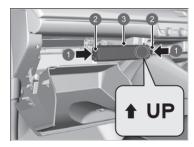
The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



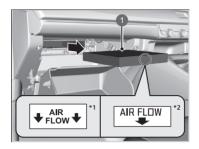
- **2.** Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from glove box.
- **3.** Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
- **4.** Pivot the glove box out of the way.

- Stopper
- 2 Tabs



**5.** Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

- 1 Push
- 2 Tabs
- Cover



- 1 Dust and Pollen Filter
- \*1: Except Latin American models
- \*2: Latin American models

- **6.** Remove the filter from the case.
- **7.** Install a new filter in the case.
  - ▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

# Cleaning

### **Interior Care**

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Loop

#### 

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

### Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ■ Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass\*

The front side windows are laminated with UV- and/or IR-cut film. When cleaning the interior side of the windows, make sure to use a soft damp cloth.

### ■ Panoramic roof glass\*

The interior side of the glass has a heat reflective coating. Wipe using a soft cloth moist with cold or warm water.

#### ○ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front wide view camera and the rainfall/light sensor\*.

- Headlights/Position Lights P. 192
- Automatic Intermittent Wipers\* P. 205
- Front Wide View Camera P. 467

#### Models with Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass

To ensure the longevity of the UV- and/or IR-cut film, avoid:

- Opening and closing the windows when they are covered with dirt and other debris.
- Using a glass cleaner containing polishing compounds, wax, or detergents.

#### Models with panoramic roof

To ensure the longevity of the heat reflective coating avoid:

• Using glass cleaners, waxes, or detergents that contain polishing powder or compound.

### Floor Mats\*



The driver's and front passenger's\* floor mats hook over the floor anchors, which keep the mats from sliding forward. When reinstalling the mats after cleaning, position them properly.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

- Unlock
- 2 Lock

### | Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

- 1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
- 2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
- **3.** Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
- **4.** Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

#### ≫Floor Mats\*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions

### Maintaining Genuine Leather Maintainin

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

### **Exterior Care**

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

# Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

#### **≥** Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Air Intake Vents

### Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

### ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

# Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ■ Water repellent glass\*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

#### ■ Applying Wax

#### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

#### Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

### ∑Cleaning the Window

#### Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

### Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

### ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

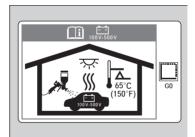
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### Hydrophilic Mirror\*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

- 1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
- 2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
  - ▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
- **3.** Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

### ■ Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the highvoltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

#### 

#### NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

\* Not available on all models

### **Accessories and Modifications**

### **Accessories**

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.

  Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

**Fuses** P 588

• Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

■ Accessories and Modifications

# **AWARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

# **AWARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

### **Modifications**

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

#### >> Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, twoway radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

# **Handling the Unexpected**

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

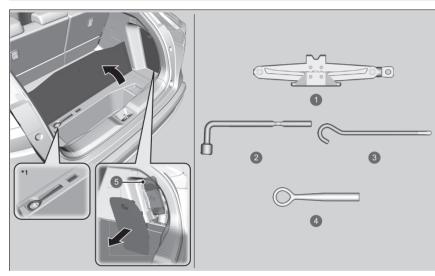
10015	
Types of Tools	554
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre	555
Handling of the Jack	568
Power System Won't Start	
Checking the Procedure	571
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak	572
Emergency Power System On	573
Emergency Power System Off	574
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	575
Shift Lever Does Not Move	578

# Overheating How to Handle Overheating

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning
Appears 582
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System
Indicator Comes On 582
If the Limited Stopping Power*1/Reduced
Stopping Power* <sup>2</sup> Warning Appears 583
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes
On or Blinks 583
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes
On or Blinks 584

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On585
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On
or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake
System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 586
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning
System Indicator Comes On or Blinks 587
Fuses
Fuse Locations 588
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 592
<b>Emergency Towing</b> 593
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 594

# **Types of Tools**



- 1 Jack
- Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle
- 3 Jack Handle Bar
- **4** Detachable Towing Hook
- **5** Tool Bag

### ∑Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Except Australian and Singaporean models

# If a Tyre Goes Flat

# **Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre**

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

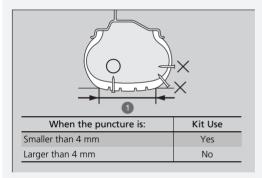
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

- **1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery ground and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### ∑Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

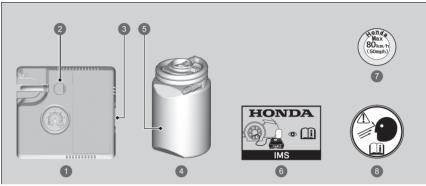


#### 1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

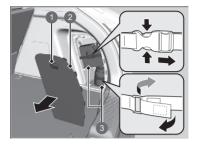
### ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



- Air Compressor
- 2 Deflate Button
- Air Compressor Switch
- 4 Sealant Bottle
- **5** Expiration Date
- **6** Instruction Manual
- Speed Restriction Label
- Wheel Label

### ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

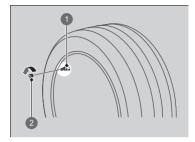
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



- 1 Tab
- 2 Cover
- 3 Tyre Repair Kit

- **1.** Open the tailgate.
- **2.** Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.
- **3.** Take the kit out of the compartment.
- **4.** Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

### ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



**1.** Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

- 1 Tyre Valve Stem
- 2 Valve Cap



- Bottle Tyre Valve
- 2 Air Compressor Hose

- 2. Shake the sealant bottle.
- **3.** Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

# **AWARNING**

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

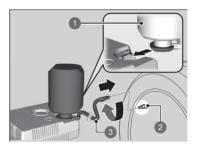
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



- Sealant Bottle
- 2 Tyre Valve Stem
- Sealant/Air Hose

- **4.** Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
- **5.** Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.





Air Compressor Switch

- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
    - **▶** Accessory Power Socket P. 239
- **7.** Turn on the vehicle's power system.
  - Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98
- **8.** Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
  - ► The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- **9.** After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.
  - ► Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ► Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

# **AWARNING**

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

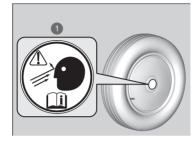
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



Wheel Label

- **10.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **11.** Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **12.** Detach the bottle from the air compressor.
- **13.** Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
- **14.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
  - ➤ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
- **15.** Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.

### ≥ Injecting Sealant and Air

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:

- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

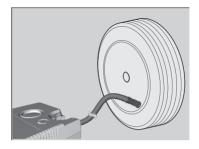
# ■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



Speed Restriction Label

- **1.** Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
- 2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.

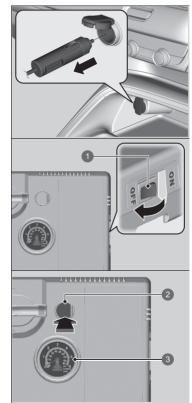
  Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- **3.** Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



- **4.** Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
  - ➤ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
- **5.** If the air pressure is:
  - Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
     Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

### **Emergency Towing** P. 593

- Front:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)/rear:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi) or more:
   Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- ► If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.



- Air Compressor Switch
- 2 Deflate Button
- Air Pressure Gauge

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than front:220 kPa (2.2 bar,32 psi)/rear:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi):
   Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi)/rear:210 kPa (2.1 bar, 30 psi).
  - ▶ Injecting Sealant and Air P. 558
    Then, drive carefully for 10 more
    minutes or until you reach the nearest
    service station.
- Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.
- **6.** Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
- **7.** Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **8.** Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
- 9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

# **AWARNING**

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

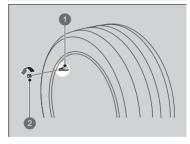
### ■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



- **1.** Take the kit out of the luggage area.
  - **■** Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 556
- **2.** Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
- 3. Remove the air hose from the kit.

- Power Plug
- 2 Air Hose



- Tyre Valve Stem
- Valve Cap

**4.** Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

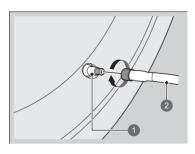
# **AWARNING**

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.
Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



**5.** Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

- 1 Tyre Valve Stem
- Air Hose



- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
    - **⚠ Accessory Power Socket** P. 239
- **7.** Turn on the vehicle's power system.
  - Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 98



Air Compressor Switch

- **8.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
  - ► The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
  - ► If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
- **9.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- **10.** Turn off the kit.
  - ► Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- **11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **12.** Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

# Handling of the Jack

# How to Set up the Jack

- **1.** Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- **4.** Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.



- 1 Tab
- 2 Cover



- Jack
- 2 Tool Bag

- **5.** Take the jack and tool bag out of the compartment.
- **6.** Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.

➤ How to Set up the Jack

# **AWARNING**

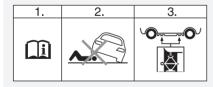
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

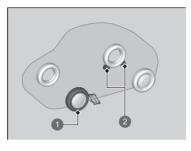
**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

#### Australian models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



- 1. See Owner's Manual.
- 2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
- 3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



**7.** Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

- 1 The tyre to be replaced.
- Wheel Blocks



Jacking Points

**8.** Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

Mow to Set up the Jack
 The state of the sta

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call a dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

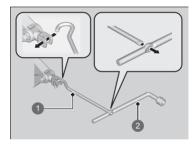
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the power system is on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



- **9.** Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
  - ► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

Jacking Point



**10.**Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

- 1 Jack Handle Bar
- 2 Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

# Power System Won't Start

# **Checking the Procedure**

When the **READY** indicator does not come on and Ready To Drive does not appear on the driver information interface, check the following items and take appropriate action.

∑Checking the Procedure

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

**If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 575

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency start procedure.

**Emergency Power System On** P. 573

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	Temperature Is Too Cold For Vehicle To Operate*1/  Temperature Too Low For Vehicle To Operate*2  appears.	<ul> <li>You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.</li> <li>Contact a dealer if necessary.</li> </ul>
	To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button appears.	<b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 572
	The <b>POWER SYSTEM</b> indicator*1/ (Power System) indicator*2 comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Put the transmission into P.
	em starting procedure. and try to start the power system again.	<b>■ Turning on the Power</b> P. 359
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	<b>▶ Immobilizer System Indicator</b> P. 113

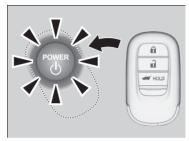
If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Latin American models

<sup>\*2:</sup> Except Latin American models

# If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button appears on the driver information interface, the POWER button flashes, and the READY indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:



- 1. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ► The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



- 2. Depress the brake pedal and press the POWER button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the POWER button changes from flashing to on.
  - ▶ If you do not depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

# **Emergency Power System On**

If the power system can not be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below. Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

- 1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you press the electric parking brake switch.
- **2.** Check that the transmission is in  $\boxed{P}$ , then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
- **3.** Firmly depress the brake pedal and press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### **≥**Emergency Power System On

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the  $\boxed{P}$  position.

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 578

# **Emergency Power System Off**

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped. To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into  $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$  after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

### **≫**Emergency Power System Off

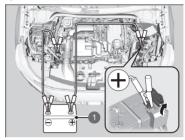
Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

# If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead

# **Jump Starting Procedure**

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



Booster Battery

- **1.** Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive  $\oplus$  terminal.
- **2.** Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
- **3.** Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ► Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ➤ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
- **4.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\bigcirc$  terminal.

### **AWARNING**

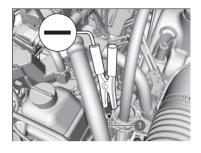
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

#### NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



- **5.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- **6.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
- **7.** Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

### 

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

### ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order

- **1.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
- **2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\bigcirc$  terminal
- **3.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
- **4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

### 

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, VSA OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System\* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you turn the power system on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

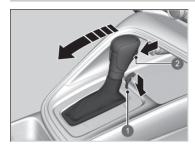
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the  $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$  position.

## ■ Releasing the Lock



- Shift Lock Release Slot
- Release Button

- **1.** Set the parking brake.
- 2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- **3.** Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
- **4.** Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
- **5.** While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into  $\overline{N}$ .
  - ► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

579

## Overheating

## **How to Handle Overheating**

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- POWER Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.\*1/
   High Temperature. Power Reduced.\*2 appears on the driver information interface.
- Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.\*1 Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.\*2 appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.\*1/ High Temperature. Power Reduced.\*2 Appears on the Driver Information Interface

Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.\*1/ High Temperature. Power Reduced.\*2 appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

- 1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ➤ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into P. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
- 2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
  - ▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

## **AWARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with Fengine Temperature
Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.\*1/
Final Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine
To Cool.\*2 on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If REDUCED Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.\*1/ High Temperature.

Power Reduced.\*2 appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

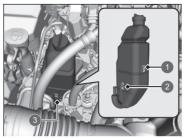
- \*1: Latin American models
- \*2: Except Latin American models

Continued

- Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.\*1/ Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.\*2 Appears on the Driver Information Interface
- First thing to do
- **1.** Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
- 2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ No steam or spray present: Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
  - ➤ Steam or spray is present: Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

- \*1: Latin American models
- \*2: Except Latin American models

### ■ Next thing to do



- MAX
- MIN
- Reserve Tank

- 1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive.

  Allow Engine To Cool.\*1/E Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.\*2 on the driver information interface disappears.
  - ► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
- **2.** Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
  - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## **AWARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on. If Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.\*1/ Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.\*2 does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

\*1: Latin American models

\*2: Except Latin American models

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

## If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears



### ■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

- **1.** Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
- 2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

- **1.** Stop the power system and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
- 2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
  - Add oil as necessary.
    - Oil Check P. 511
- **3.** Start the engine and check the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** warning.
  - ► The warning disappears: Start driving again.
  - ► The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the power system and contact a dealer for repairs.

## If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

≥ If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

≥ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

# If the Limited Stopping Power\*1/Reduced Stopping Power\*2 Warning Appears



■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when braking ability is reduced.



■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



- Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink
- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.
- What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

≥ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

<sup>\*1:</sup> Latin American models

<sup>\*2:</sup> Except Latin American models

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

## ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

### Reasons for the indicator to blink

• There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

 Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ≥ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the transmission.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☑ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 586

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

- What to do when the indicator comes on
- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically

Parking Brake P. 469



- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  - Preventing the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

■If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

### Models with deflation warning system

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ► Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.
  - **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 395
- What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

■If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## **Fuses**

## **Fuse Locations**

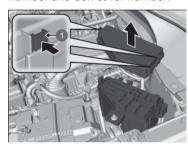
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown

### **■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box**

### ■ Fuse box A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Tabs

## **■** Circuit protected and fuse rating

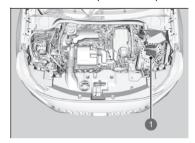
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	P	Wiper	30 A
2	<u>l</u> i	Left LCM	15 A
3		Hazard	10 A
4	( <u>)</u>	Stop	10 A
5	<u>l</u> i	PCU EWP	15 A
6	<u>l</u> i	_	(20 A)
7	<u>l</u> i	EVTC	20 A
8	Πi	IGP	15 A
9	<u>l</u> i	IG Coil	15 A
10	Πi	DBW	15 A
11	<u>l</u> i	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12	*	Main Fan	30 A
13	<u>l</u> i	Engine Water Pump	30 A
14	Πi	Keyless Access System	10 A
15	<u>l</u> i	Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16	Πi	Right LCM	15 A
17	<u>l</u> i	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18	b	Horn	10 A
19	<u>l</u> i	Sub Audio*	(7.5 A)
20	10	Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21	<u> </u>	Audio	15 A
22	$\prod$ i	Back Up	15 A
23	<u> </u>	Sub Fan	30 A
24	$\prod$ i	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25	(li	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26	(li	LAF	10 A
27	_	-	-
28	_	_	_
29	_	-	-
30	_	_	_
31	_	-	-
32	_	_	_
33	-	-	-

### ■ Fuse box B

Located near the  $\oplus$  terminal of the 12-volt battery.

Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.



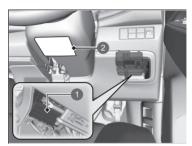
• Fuse Box

### **■** Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
а	- +	Battery Main	170 A
b	□i	Battery Main (Fan)	60 A
C	Ωì	Battery Main (ENG)	80 A
d	□i	Battery Main (HEV)	60 A
е	$\odot$	EPS	70 A
f	Ωì	ESB	40 A

### ■ Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



- 1 Fuse Box
- 2 Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### **■** Circuit protected and fuse rating

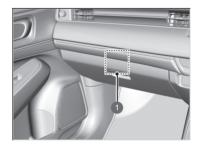
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	<u>l</u> i	Accessory	7.5 A
2	<u>l</u> i	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3	<u>i</u>	Blind spot information System*	(10 A)
4	<u>l</u> i	LCM*	(5 A)
5	<u>l</u> i	Option	10 A
6	$\prod$ i	Option 2	10 A
7	<u>l</u> i	Meter	10 A
8	$(\Box)$	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	<u>l</u> i	AIRCON	10 A
10	Πi	-	(20 A)
11	<u>l</u> i	MON	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	RR L	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	AS T	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17	<u>l</u> i	Transmission	10 A
18	Πi	USB Charger*	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
19	<u>l</u> i	-	(20 A)
20	$\prod$ i	Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21	<u>i</u>	ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	<u>i</u>	-	(10 A)
24	$\prod$ i	Option	10 A
25		-	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	RR R	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	DR	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	<u> </u>	Front Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
30	(li	Heated Windscreen*	(10 A)
31		Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
32	##	Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	DR	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
34	<u>l</u> i	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	*	SRS	10 A
36	<u>l</u> i	-	(20 A)
37	<u> </u>	Heated Steering Wheel*	(15 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39		_	(10 A)

## ■ Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



1 Fuse No. 1

The fuses other than No.1 are under the dashboard.



- Fuse Label
- 2 Fuse No. 2-25

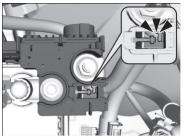
Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

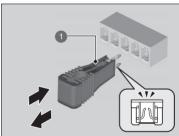
### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

- circuit protected and ruse rating			
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	<u>l</u> i	Fuse Box Main	60 A
2	$\prod$ i	IG Main	30 A
3	<u>l</u> i	IG Main 2	30 A
4	$\prod$ i	Relay Module 1	30 A
5	<u>l</u> i	Relay Module 2	30 A
6	$\prod$ i	Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7	<u>i</u>	Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8	35	Heater Motor	30 A
9	<u>i</u>	-	(40 A)
10	(III)	Rear Demister	30 A
11	<u>i</u>	-	(40 A)
12	_	-	_
13	<u>i</u>	Power Tailgate Motor*	(40 A)
14	*	SRS	10 A
15	<u>i</u>	IG HOLD1	10 A
16	$\prod$ i	IG HOLD3	10 A
17	<u>i</u>	IMG	10 A
18	$\prod$ i	-	(20 A)
19	_	-	_
20	_	-	_
21	<u>i</u>	Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
22	$\prod$ i	IG HOLD2	15 A
23	Πi	Washer	(15 A)
24	<b>III</b>	_	(10 A)
25	_	_	_

\* Not available on all models

## **Inspecting and Changing Fuses**





• Fuse Puller

- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
- **2.** Remove the cover on the  $\oplus$  terminal.
- **3.** Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
- **4.** Remove the fuse box cover.
- **5.** Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 588

Replace a fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the cover of the engine compartment fuse box A.

## **Emergency Towing**

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

### **■** Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

### ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.** 

### Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

Parking Brake P. 469

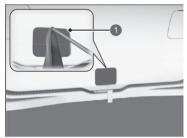
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

## If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

## ■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Lid

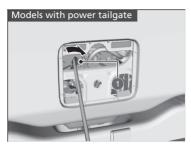
- **1.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the back of the tailgate.
  - ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

### **>>** What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



**2.** To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

1 Lever



1 Lever

## **Information**

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	598
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),	
Engine Number, Motor Number and	
Transmission Number	601
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	602
TCU Open Source Licence*	606

\* Not available on all models 597

## Specifications

### **■** Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V		
Curb Weight	1,382 kg*1 1,380 kg* <sup>2.*3</sup> 1,370 - 1,407 kg* <sup>4</sup> 1,393 kg* <sup>5</sup>		
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,870 kg* <sup>1, *2</sup> 1,830 kg* <sup>3, *4, *5</sup>		
Maximum Permissible	Front 1,030 kg		
Axle Weight	Rear 890 kg* <sup>1, *2</sup> 865 kg* <sup>3, *4, *5</sup>		

<sup>\*1:</sup> Australian models

### **■** Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm	
Displacement	1,498 cm <sup>3</sup>	
Compression Ratio	13.5 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7C11H
spark riugs	DENSO	DXE22HCR11H

### ■ Fuel

	Except Thai and Malaysian models
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number 91 or higher
	Thai models
Туре	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), Research octane number 91 or higher
	Malaysian models
	Unleaded premium petrol, Research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

### ■ 12-volt Battery

Capacity	32AH(5)/40AH(20)	
----------	------------------	--

### **■** Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L	

<sup>\*2:</sup> Singaporean models \*3: Latin American models

<sup>\*4:</sup> Thai models

<sup>\*5:</sup> Malaysian models

### ■ Light Rulhs

Light b	ains			
Headlights (Low Beam)		LED		
Headlights (High Beam)		LED		
Position/Daytin	ne Running Lights	LED		
Front Turn Sign	nal Lights	LED		
Active Cornerin	ng Lights*	LED		
Front Fog Light	ts*	LED		
Side Turn Signa (on Door Mirro		LED		
Brake Lights		LED		
Taillights		LED		
Rear Turn Sign	al Lights	21 W (Amber)		
Back-Up Lights	5	16 W		
Rear Licence P	late Light	LED		
High-Mount Br	ake Light	LED		
Interior Lights				
	Front Map lights	LED		
	Ceiling Light*	LED		
	Rear Map Lights*	LED		
	Vanity Mirror Lights	2.3 W		
	Luggage Area Lights	LED		
	•			

### ■ Brake Fluid

Specified Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT
---

### ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)*1 HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)*2	
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g*¹ 395 - 445 g*²	

<sup>\*1:</sup> Except Singaporean and Australian models

### ■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW	-1	
Capacity	Change	1.8 L	

### ■ Fngine Oil

= Linginic Oil			
	Models wit filter	th gasoline particulate	
	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C5 0W-20		
Recommended	Models wit	thout gasoline filter	
		e Motor Oil 0W-20 or higher grade or W-20	
Capacity	Change	3.1 L*1 3.4 L*2	
	Change including filter	3.3 L*1 3.6 L*2	
*1. Event Cinanne	roon models		

\*1: Except Singaporean models
\*2: Singaporean models
Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 509

<sup>\*2:</sup> Singaporean and Australian models

### **■** Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	$4.22\ L$ (change including the remaining $0.45\ L$ in the reserve tank)

### **■** Tyre

-			
Danislan	Size*1	215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V	
Regular	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb	
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J*² 18 x 7 1/2J*³	

- \*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

  \*2: Models with 17 inch wheel
- \*3: Models with 18 inch wheel

■ Brake

Туре	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

### ■ Vehicle Dimensions

		4,335 mm*1
		4,340 mm* <sup>2</sup>
Length		4,345 mm*3
		4,330 mm*4
		4,385 mm* <sup>5, *6</sup>
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
		1,535 mm*1, *2, *5, *6
	Front	1,545 mm* <sup>4</sup>
Track		1,548 mm* <sup>3</sup>
IIdCK		1,540 mm*1, *2, *6
	Rear	1,553 mm* <sup>3,*4</sup>
		1,543 mm*5

- \*1: Australian models

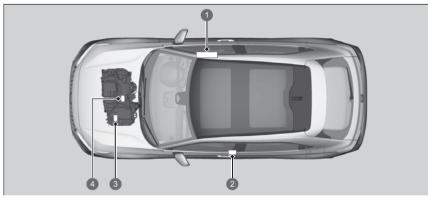
- \*2: Singaporean models
  \*3: Latin American models
  \*4: Thai models with 17 inch wheel
- \*5: Thai models with 18 inch wheel
- \*6: Malaysian models

601

## **Identification Numbers**

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



- Vehicle Identification Number
- 2 Certification Label\*/Certification Plate\*/Vehicle Identification Number\*/Chassis Number\*
- 3 Transmission Number Motor Number
- 4 Engine Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Cover

\* Not available on all models

## **Devices that Emit Radio Waves\***

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

### Models under the FCC regulations

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

### AS required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

		Keyless Access System
	BCM	FOB
Jamaican models	This product has been Type Approved by Jama "41580430" on the product	aica: SMA – This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "TP_4" on the product
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440
Thai models	เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี ได้รับยกเว็น ไม่ต้องได้ รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสพร. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว็นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498	เครื่องวิทยุคมนามนี้ ได้รับยกเว็บ ไม่ต้องได้ รับในอบุญาตให้มี ใช้ชั่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งแถกนี้วิทยุคมนาผมขนายกาศ กสพช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว็บไม่ต้องได้รับใบอบุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมคามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498

### Bermuda and Grand Cayman models

Bermuda and Grand Cayman models				
Keyless Access System				
BCM	FOB			
http://continental-homologation.com/honda	http://continental-homologation.com/honda			
CE	(			
Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model	Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model			
[41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and	[TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other			
other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.	relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.			
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the	The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the			
following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/	following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/			
honda	honda			
Instructions and safety information:	Instructions and safety information:			
Short range device for remote control	Short range device for remote control			
Postal address:	Postal address:			
Siemensstrasse 12	Siemensstrasse 12			
D-93055 Regensburg	D-93055 Regensburg			
Germany	Germany			
Manufacturer name:	Manufacturer name:			
Continental Automotive GmbH	Continental Automotive GmbH			
Frequency band: 125KHz	Frequency band: 433.92MHz			
Maximum transmitted output: 10mW	Maximum transmitted output: 1mW			
Importer Name:	Importer Name:			
Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office	Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office			
Postal address:	Postal address:			
Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium	Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium			

### Telematics Control Unit\*

Inspection and certification of telecommunications equipment and devices

This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC).

Safety Criteria and Measures for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Thai models



### Wireless Charger

Bahamas models LG Electronics WC500HOCI21 URCA\_TA\_2020\_151

\* Not available on all models

## TCU Open Source Licence\*

## **Free/Open Source Software Information**

This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).

The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

Numbers		Adjusting the Sound		Arrange Contents	135
12 Valt Pattony	E 2 /	Agile Handling Assist	394	Audio	131
12-Volt Battery		Air Conditioning System (Climate	Control	Audio Remote Controls	262
Charging System Indicator	, 582	System)	247	Audio System	256
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt	E24	Air Outlet	253	Adjusting the Sound	275
Battery)	554	Changing the Mode	249	AM/FM Radio	282
		Defrosting the Windscreen and		Android Auto	305
A		Windows		App Shortcut Function	265
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	176	Dust and Pollen Filter	540	Apple CarPlay	301
Accessories and Modifications		Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	249	Audio Remote Controls	262
Accessory Power Sockets		Sensor	254	Audio System Function	259
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System		Synchronization Mode	252	Audio/Information Screen	264
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low		Using Automatic Climate Control	247	Basic Operation	259
Speed Follow		Air Outlet	253	Bluetooth® Audio	297
Indicator (Amber)		Air Pressure	600	Clock Setup	272
Indicator (Amber)		Airbags	56	DAB	287
	110	After a Collision	58	Display Setup	276
Adding	E12	Airbag Care	70	Error Messages	342
Coolant		Event Data Recorder	1	FLAC/PCM/WAVE	293
Engine Oil		Front Airbags (SRS)	58	General Information	343
Washer		Indicator	68, 109	How to Update	277
Additives, Engine Oil		Sensors		How to Update Wirelessly	280
Adjustable Speed Limiter		Side Airbags	64	How to Update with a USB Device	
Indicator	115	Side Curtain Airbags		iPod	
Adjusting	227	AM/FM Radio		Limitations for Manual Operation	271
Armrest		Ambient Meter	121	MP3/WMA/AAC	
Front Seats		Android Auto	305	Radio Data System (RDS)	285
Head Restraints		Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	476	Selecting an Audio Source	
Headlights		Indicator		Start Up	
Mirrors		Apple CarPlay		Status Area	
Stooring Whool	210	Apple CarPlay	301	Status Area	270

Armrest ...... 227

System Updates Settings278	Automatic Brake Hold 473	Changing Bulbs 518
USB Flash Drives	Brake Assist System 477	Child Restraint System 71
USB Ports257, 261	Fluid 516	Booster Seats
Wallpaper Setup	Foot Brake 472	Child Restraint System for Infants
Wi-Fi Connection	Indicator 104, 105, 106, 584, 586	Child Restraint System for Small
Audio/Information Screen	Parking Brake	Children
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 170	Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 209	Installing a Child Restraint System
Auto High-Beam 201	Bulb Replacement 518	with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt
Automatic Brake Hold 473	Active Cornering Lights 518	Larger Children 95
Indicator	Back-Up Lights 521	Rear-facing Child Restraint System
Automatic Folding Door Mirror	Brake Lights 519	Selecting a Child Restraint System
Function	Daytime Running Lights 518	Using a Tether
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 205	Front Fog Lights 518	Child Safety 71
Average Fuel Economy 128	Front Turn Signal Lights 518	Childproof Door Locks
Average Speed 130	Headlights518	Childproof Door Locks
	High-Mount Brake Light 522	Cleaning the Exterior 546
В	Position Lights 518	Cleaning the Interior 543
D	Rear Licence Plate Light 522	Climate Control System 247
Battery	Rear Turn Signal Lights 519	Air Outlet
12-Volt Battery Charging System	Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	Changing the Mode247
Indicator 107, 582	Lights 518	Defrosting the Windscreen and
High Voltage 12, 402	Taillights 519, 521	Windows
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 575	Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs 523	Dust and Pollen Filter 540
Belts (Seat)	Bulb Specifications 599	Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode
Beverage Holders 232		Sensors
Blind spot information System 397	С	Synchronization Mode
Bluetooth® Audio 297	C	Using Automatic Climate Control 247
Booster Seats (For Children)	Carbon Monoxide Gas 98	Clock 122, 150
Brake System 469	Carrying Luggage 353, 355	CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 476	Certification Label 601	<b>System)</b>

Coat Hooks 233	Dimming	Elapsed Time
Collision Mitigation Braking System	Headlights	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
(CMBS) 406	Rearview Mirror	Indicator
Console Box	Dipstick (Engine Oil)	Emergency Stop Signal
Controls 149	Display Audio	Emergency Towing 593
Coolant (Engine)	Display Setup	Engine
Overheating	Door Mirrors	If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 575
Cooling System	Doors	Number
Adding to the Reserve Tank 513	Auto Door Locking	Oil
Creeping	Auto Door Unlocking	Switch Buzzer
Cross Traffic Monitor	Door and Tailgate Open Message 42	Engine Coolant
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed	Keys 153	Overheating 579
Follow and the LKAS 122	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	<b>Engine Oil</b> 509
Customize Display	the Inside	Adding 512
Customized Features 309, 316	Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	Checking 511
,	the Outside	Pressure Low Warning 582
<b>D</b>	Lockout Prevention System	Recommended Engine Oil 509, 599
D	Drive Mode Switch 374	EPS (Electric Power Steering)
DAB	Driver Information Interface 123	System 111, 585
Daytime Running Lights 197	Switching the Display 123	EV Indicator 107
<b>Dead Battery</b> 575	Driving 351	Exhaust Gas Hazard
Deceleration Paddle Selector 370	Braking	(Carbon Monoxide) 98
Defaulting All the Settings 322	Shifting Gear	Exterior Care (Cleaning) 546
Deflation Warning System 395	Transmission	Exterior Mirrors 212
Calibration	Driving Guidelines for Your Utility	
Indicator 112, 587	Vehicle	F
Defrosting the Windscreen and	Dust and Pollen Filter 540	Г
<b>Windows</b>		Features
<b>Demister</b>	F	Filter
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 602	E	Dust and Pollen540
	e:HEV/	

Flat TyreFluids	555
Brake	516
Cooling System	
Windscreen Washer	
FM/AM Radio	282
Folding Down the Rear Seats	219
Foot Brake	472
Front Airbags (SRS)	58
Front Fog Light Indicator	111
Front Seat Heaters	244
Front Seats	215
Adjusting	
Front Wide View Camera	467
Fuel 29,	493
Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions	496
Gauge	120
Instant Fuel Economy	128
Low Fuel Indicator	109
Range	128
Recommendation	493
Refueling	493
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions	496
Fuel Fill Cap	494
Fuel Fill Door29,	494
Fuses	
Inspecting and Changing	
Locations 588, 590,	591

G	
Gauges 120	
Glass (care)	
Glove Box	
Н	
Hands-Free Telephone System 323	
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and	
Recent calls	
Automatic Transferring	
Favourite Contacts	
HFT Buttons	
HFT Menus	
HFT Status Display 325	
Limitations for Manual Operation 326	
Making a Call	
Options During a Call	
Phone Settings Screen	
Phone Setup	
Receiving a Call	
Ring Tone	
Hazard Warning Button 6	
Head Restraints 224	
Headlights	
Adjuster 200	
Aiming 518	
Auto High-Beam201	
Dimming 192	
Operating 192	
Heated Door Mirror Button 207	

Heated Steering Wheel	243
Heated Windscreen Button	208
Heaters (Front Seat)	244
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)	323
High Voltage Battery	402
High-Beam Indicator	111
Hill Descent Control System	377
Indicator	115
Hill Start Assist System	364
Honda Sensing	30, 403
Hybrid Vehicle	
e:HEV	11
Hydrophilic Mirror	549
I	
•	
Identification Numbers	
Engine, Motor and Transmission	
Vehicle Identification	
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead	
Illumination Control	
Immobilizer System	
Indicator	
Indicators	
12-Volt Battery Charging System 1	-
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Lo	
Follow	
Adjustable Speed Limiter	
Auto High-Beam	
Automatic Brake Hold 1	106, 474

Automatic Brake Hold System  Deceleration Paddle Selector		108
ECON Mode		114
Electric Power Steering (EPS)		
System		
EV		107
Front Fog Light		111
High-Beam		111
Hill Descent Control System		115
Immobilizer System		113
Intelligent Speed Limiter		115
Lane Keeping Assist System		
(LKAS)	116,	117
Lights On		111
Low Fuel		109
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning	ı	
System	112,	587
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	107,	583
NORMAL Mode		114
Parking Brake and Brake System		
(Amber)	106,	586
Parking Brake and Brake System		
(Red)104, 105,	584,	586
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off		110
Power System		107
Ready		107
Safety Support (Amber)		117
Safety Support (Green/Grey)		119
Seat Belt Reminder		109
Security System Alarm		113
Jecuity Jystein / Marin		

Shift Position 1	108
SPORT Mode 1	114
Supplemental Restraint System 68, 1	109
System Message Indicator 1	114
Transmission System 1	108
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 1	111
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 110, 3	393
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 1	110
Information	597
Instant Fuel Economy 1	128
Instrument Panel 1	101
Brightness Control 2	209
Intelligent Speed Limiter 3	385
Indicator1	115
Interior Convenience Items 2	228
Interior Lights	228
Interior Rearview Mirror 2	211
iPhone 3	343
iPod 290, 3	343
IR Cut Glass 5	544
1	
Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 5	
Jacking Points 5	
Jump Starting 5	575
K	
Key Number Tag 1	154
Keyless Lockout Prevention 1	165

Keys		153
Lockout Prevention		165
Number Tag		154
Rear Door Won't Open		169
Remote Transmitter		162
Types and Functions		153
Kickdown		367
L		
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)		436
Indicator (Amber)		116
Indicator (White/Green)		117
Lead Car Departure Notification		
System		456
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/	Andı	roic
Auto		347
Lights	192,	518
Active Cornering Lights		
Bulb Replacement		518
Daytime Running Lights		197
Fog Light		196
High-Beam Indicator Light		11
Interior		228
Light Switches		192
Lights On Indicator		111
Luggage Area Lights		230
Limited Stopping Power/Reduced Sto	oppi	ng
Power Warning		583
Load Limits		351

Locking/Unlocking 153	Oil	511	Oil (Engine) 509
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 170	Precautions	498	Adding 512
Childproof Door Locks	Radiator	514	Checking 511
From Inside	Remote Transmitter	537	Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 582
From Outside	Replacing Light Bulbs	518	Recommended Engine Oil 509
Keys 153	Safety	499	Viscosity 509, 599
Using a Key 164	Transmission Fluid	515	Open Source Licences 346
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from	Tyres	529	Opening/Closing
the Outside	Under the Bonnet		Bonnet 507
Lockout Prevention System 165	Malfunction Indicator Lamp 107	7, 583	Power Windows 185
Low Battery Charge 582	Map Light Switches	229	Tailgate 171
Low Fuel Indicator 109	Maximum Permissible Weight 355	5, 598	Other Interior Convenience Items 238
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 155	Meters, Gauges	120	Outside Temperature Display 121
Low Oil Pressure Warning 582	Mirrors	211	<b>Overheating</b> 579
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System	Adjusting	211	
Indicator 112, 587	Door	212	Р
Lower Anchorages 87	Interior Rearview	211	r
Lubricant Specifications Chart 599	Modifications (and Accessories)	550	Parking Brake 469
Luggage (Load Limit) 355	MP3/WMA/AAC	293	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
Luggage Area Cover	Multi-View Rear Camera	491	(Amber)
Luggage Hook234			Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
	N		(Red)
M	IV		Parking Sensor System 481
IVI	Navigation	131	Passenger Front Airbag Off System 61
Maintenance	Numbers (Identification)	601	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off
12-Volt Battery 534			Indicator 69, 110
Brake Fluid 516	0		Passing Indicators
Cleaning543	_		Petrol
Climate Control	Odometer		Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
Cooling System 513	Off-road Guidelines	357	Gauge 120

Information	Rearview Mirror211	Fastening	4
Instant Fuel Economy 128	Refuel Recommend 349	Installing a Child Restraint System	
Low Fuel Indicator	Refueling 493	with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	9
Refueling	Fuel Gauge 120	Pregnant Women	
Phone 131		Reminder	4!
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio 297	Petrol 493, 598	Warning Indicator 45, 10	)
POWER Button 189		Seat Heaters 24	
Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High	Remote Transmitter 162	<b>Seats</b> 2 <sup></sup>	1
Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 126	Replacement	Adjusting 2	1.
Power System Indicator 107	Bulbs 518	Front Seats 2°	1
Power System Won't Start 571	Front Wiper Blade Rubber 524	Rear Seats 2°	1
Power Windows 185	Fuses 588, 590, 591	Seat Heaters24	4
Power/Charge125	Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 527	Security System18	3.
POWER/CHARGE Gauge 120	Remote Battery 537	Immobilizer System Indicator 17	1.
Precautions While Driving 365		Security System Alarm Indicator 1	1
Rain 366	Reverse Tilt Door Mirror 213	Select Lever	2
Pregnant Women 53	Road Departure Mitigation 448	Selecting a Child Restraint System	7
Puncture (Tyre)555	On and Off 451	Selecting the Desired Air Outlet 25	5.
		Setting the Clock 15	5
P	S	Settings 13	3
N.	3	Shift Lever	2
Radiator 514	3	Operation	2
Radio (AM/FM) 282	Safety Labels	Releasing 57	7
Radio Data System (RDS) 285	Safety Message 0	Won't Move57	7
Range 128		Shifting (Transmission)	õ
Range / Fuel / Trip Meter 127	Indicator (Amber) 117, 118, 119	Shoulder Anchorage	5
RDS (Radio Data System) 285	Indicator (Green/Grey) 119	Side Airbags 6	ĵ,
Ready Indicator 107	<b>Seat Belts</b>	Side Curtain Airbags 6	5
Rear Demister 207	., 5	Spark Plugs 59	9
Rear Seat Reminder 222		Specifications 59	
Rear Seats 219	Checking 54	<b>Specified Fuel</b> 493, 59	9

<b>Speed &amp; Time</b>	Tools	Checking and Maintaining	529
Speed Alarm 132	Towing a Trailer 356	Inspection	529
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 379	Towing Your Vehicle	Rotation	532
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 385	Emergency 593	Tyre Chains	533
Speedometer 120	Traffic Sign Recognition System 122, 461	Wear Indicators	530
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 58	Transmission 367, 368	Winter	533
Starting the Engine	Creeping		
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 575	Fluid 515	U	
Steering Wheel 210	Kickdown367	U	
Adjusting210	Number 601	Unlocking the Doors	156
Stopping 479	Operating the Shift Lever	Unlocking the Front Doors from	
Storage Items 231	Shift Lever Does Not Move 578	the Inside	
<b>Sun Visor</b> 238	Trip Meter 128, 130	USB Flash Drives 293	3, 343
Super UV Cut Glass 544	TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 555	USB Ports 257	7, 261
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 58	Troubleshooting 553		
Switches (Around the Steering	Blown Fuse 588, 590, 591	V	
Wheel) 6, 7, 189	Brake Pedal Vibrates	•	
Switching the Display 123	Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 34	Vanity Mirrors	
System Updates277	Emergency Towing 593	Vehicle Identification Numbers	
	Noise When Braking	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	392
<del>-</del>	Overheating 579	OFF Button	393
1	Power System Won't Start 571	OFF Indicator	
Tailgate 171	Rear Door Won't Open 169	System Indicator	110
TCU Open Source Licence 606	Shift Lever Won't Move 578	Viscosity (Oil) 509	9, 599
Temperature	Warning Indicators102	VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	392
Outside Temperature Display 121	Turn signals		
Temperature Sensor 121	Indicators (Instrument Panel) 111	W	
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 555	Turning on the Power		
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 555	Does Not Activate 571	Wallpaper	
Tie-down Anchorages 234	Tyres 529	Warning Indicator On/Blinking	
Time (Setting) 150	Air Pressure 600	Warning Labels	
		Water Repellent Glass	547

vvalls	293
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	530
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	570
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate	594
Wi-Fi Connection	300
Window Washers	204
Adding/Refilling Fluid	517
Switch	204
Windows (Opening and Closing)	185
Windscreen	204
Cleaning 544,	547
Defrosting/Defogging 207,	250
Washer Fluid	517
Wiper Blades	524
Wipers and Washers	204
Winter Tyres	533
Tyre Chains	533
Wipers and Washers	204
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	20!
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	524
Front	204
Rear	206
Wireless Charger	240
WMA	293
Worn Tyres	529